

---

STATUTORY INSTRUMENTS

---

**2005 No. 1529**

**FINANCIAL SERVICES AND MARKETS**

The Financial Services and Markets Act  
2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005

<i>Made</i>	- - - -	<i>8th June 2005</i>
<i>Laid before Parliament</i>		<i>9th June 2005</i>
<i>Coming into force</i>	- -	<i>1st July 2005</i>

The Treasury, in exercise of the powers conferred on them by section 21(5), (6), (9) and (10), and section 428(3) of, and paragraph 25 of Schedule 2 to, the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000<sup>M1</sup>, hereby make the following Order:

**Marginal Citations**

M1 2000 c. 8.

**PART I U.K.**

*Citation, Commencement and Interpretation*

**Citation and commencement U.K.**

1. This Order may be cited as the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005 and comes into force on 1st July 2005.

**Interpretation: general U.K.**

2.—(1) In this Order, except where the context otherwise requires—

F1  
...

F1  
...

[F2“the 2006 Act” means the Companies Act 2006]

“the Act” means the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000;

“close relative” in relation to a person means—

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) his spouse [<sup>F3</sup>or civil partner];
  - (b) his children and step-children, his parents and step-parents, his brothers and sisters and his step-brothers and step-sisters; and
  - (c) the spouse [<sup>F3</sup>or civil partner] of any person within sub-paragraph (b);
- “controlled activity” has the meaning given by article 4 and Schedule 1;
- [<sup>F4</sup>“controlled claims management activity” has the meaning given in article 4(3);]
- “controlled investment” has the meaning given by article 4 and Schedule 1;
- “deposit” means a sum of money which is a deposit for the purposes of article 5 of the Regulated Activities Order;
- [<sup>F5</sup>“direct financial benefit” includes any commission, discount, remuneration or reduction in premium;]
- “equity share capital” has the meaning given in [<sup>F6</sup>the 2006 Act (see section 548)];
- “financial promotion restriction” has the meaning given by article 5;
- “government” means the government of the United Kingdom, the Scottish Administration, the Executive Committee of the Northern Ireland Assembly, the National Assembly for Wales and any government of any country or territory outside the United Kingdom;
- [<sup>F7</sup>“information society service” is to be read in accordance with the definition of “information society services” in regulation 2 of the Electronic Commerce (EC Directive) Regulations 2002;]
- “instrument” includes any record whether or not in the form of a document;
- “international organisation” means any body the members of which comprise—
- (a) states including the United Kingdom <sup>F8</sup>... ; or
  - (b) bodies whose members comprise states including the United Kingdom <sup>F8</sup>... ;
- “overseas communicator” has the meaning given by article 30;
- “previously overseas customer” has the meaning given by article 31;
- “publication” means—
- (a) a newspaper, journal, magazine or other periodical publication;
  - (b) a web site or similar system for the electronic display of information;
  - (c) any programme forming part of a service consisting of the broadcast or transmission of television or radio programmes;
  - (d) any teletext service, that—is to say a service consisting of television transmissions consisting of a succession of visual displays (with or without accompanying sound) capable of being selected and held for separate viewing or other use;
- “qualifying contract of insurance” has the meaning given in the Regulated Activities Order;
- “qualifying credit” has the meaning given by paragraph 10 of Schedule 1;
- [<sup>F9</sup>“qualifying cryptoasset” has the meaning given by paragraph 26F of Schedule 1;]
- [<sup>F9</sup>“registered person” has the meaning given by article 73ZA;]
- <sup>M2</sup>“the Regulated Activities Order” means the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 ;
- “relevant insurance activity” has the meaning given by article 21;
- “relevant investment activities” has the meaning given by article 30;

[<sup>F10</sup>“relevant UK market” means a market that meets the criteria specified in Part A1 of Schedule 3;]

“solicited real time communication” has the meaning given by article 8;

[<sup>F11</sup>“structured deposit” means a deposit which is fully repayable at maturity on terms under which interest or a premium will be paid or is at risk, according to a formula involving factors such as—

- (a) an index or combination of indices excluding variable rate deposits whose return is directly linked to an interest rate index such as Euribor or Libor;
- (b) a financial instrument or combination of financial instruments;
- (c) a commodity or combination of commodities or other physical or non-physical non-fungible assets; or
- (d) a foreign exchange rate or combination of foreign exchange rates;]

“units”, in a collective investment scheme, has the meaning given by Part XVII of the Act;

“unsolicited real time communication” has the meaning given by article 8.

(2) References to a person engaging in investment activity are to be construed in accordance with subsection (8) of section 21 of the Act; and for these purposes, “controlled activity” and “controlled investment” in that subsection have the meaning given in this Order.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1** Words in art. 2(1) omitted (12.5.2011) by virtue of [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(2)(a)**
- F2** Words in art. 2(1) inserted (12.5.2011) by virtue of [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(2)(a)**
- F3** Words in art. 2(1) inserted (21.12.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/3392\)](#), arts. 1, **2(2)**
- F4** Words in art. 2 inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **9**
- F5** Words in art. 2 inserted (13.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/905\)](#), arts. 1, **3**
- F6** Words in art. 2(1) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(2)(b)**
- F7** Words in art. 2(1) inserted (31.12.2020) by [The Electronic Commerce and Solvency 2 \(Amendment etc.\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/1361\)](#), regs. 1(2), **9** (as amended by S.I. 2019/1390, regs. 1(2), 6); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F8** Words in art. 2(1) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **163** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F9** Words in art. 2(1) inserted (8.6.2023 for specified purposes, 7.10.2023 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/612\)](#), arts. 1(2), **4** (with art. 11)
- F10** Words in art. 2(1) inserted (18.10.2021) by [The Markets in Financial Instruments, Benchmarks and Financial Promotions \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2021 \(S.I. 2021/1074\)](#), regs. 1(2), **2(2)**
- F11** Words in art. 2(1) inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(2)**

Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

**Marginal Citations**

M2 S.I. 2001/1201 to which there are amendments not relevant to this Order.

**Interpretation: unlisted companies U.K.**

3.—(1) In this Order, an “unlisted company” means a body corporate the shares in which are not—

- (a) listed or quoted on an investment exchange whether in the United Kingdom or elsewhere;
- (b) shares in respect of which information is, with the agreement or approval of any officer of the company, published for the purpose of facilitating deals in the shares indicating prices at which persons have dealt or are willing to deal in them other than persons who, at the time the information is published, are existing members of a relevant class; or
- (c) subject to a marketing arrangement which accords to the company the facilities referred to in <sup>F12</sup>section 693(3)(b) of the 2006 Act].

(2) For the purpose of paragraph (1)(b), a person is to be regarded as a member of a relevant class if he was, at the relevant time—

- (a) an existing member or debenture holder of the company;
- (b) an existing employee of the company;
- (c) a close relative of such a member or employee; or
- (d) a trustee (acting in his capacity as such) of a trust, the principal beneficiary of which is a person within any of sub-paragraphs (a), (b) and (c).

(3) In this Order references to shares in and debentures of an unlisted company are references to—

- (a) in the case of a body corporate which is a company within the meaning of <sup>F13</sup>the 2006 Act (see section 1)], shares and debentures within the meaning of that Act <sup>F14</sup>(see sections 540(1) and (4) and 738)];

<sup>F15</sup>(b) .....

- (c) in the case of any other body corporate, investments falling within paragraph 14<sup>F16</sup>, 15 or 15A] of Schedule 1 to this Order.

**Textual Amendments**

- F12** Words in art. 3(1)(c) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(3)(a)**
- F13** Words in art. 3(3)(a) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(3)(b)(i)**
- F14** Words in art. 3(3)(a) inserted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(3)(b)(i)**
- F15** Art. 3(3)(b) omitted (12.5.2011) by virtue of [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(3)(b)(ii)**
- F16** Words in art. 3(3)(c) substituted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(a)(i)**

## PART II U.K.

### *Controlled Activities and Controlled Investments*

#### **Definition of controlled activities<sup>F17</sup>, controlled claims management activities] and controlled investments E+W+S**

<sup>F17</sup>4.—(1) For the purposes of section 21(9) of the Act, a controlled activity is an activity which falls within any of paragraphs 1 to 11 of Schedule 1.

(2) For the purposes of section 21(10) of the Act, a controlled investment is an investment which falls within any of paragraphs 12 to 27 of Schedule 1.

[<sup>F18</sup>(3) For the purposes of section 21(10B) of the Act, a controlled claims management activity is an activity carried on in Great Britain of a kind specified in paragraph 11A of Schedule 1.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F17** Words in art. 4 heading inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **10(a)**

**F18** Art. 4(3) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **10(b)**

## PART III U.K.

### *Exemptions: Interpretation and Application*

#### **Interpretation: financial promotion restriction U.K.**

5. In this Order, any reference to the financial promotion restriction is a reference to the restriction in section 21(1) of the Act.

#### **Interpretation: communications U.K.**

6. In this Order—

- (a) any reference to a communication is a reference to the communication, in the course of business, of an invitation or inducement to engage in investment activity;
- (b) any reference to a communication being made to another person is a reference to a communication being addressed, whether orally or in legible form, to a particular person or persons (for example where it is contained in a telephone call or letter);
- (c) any reference to a communication being directed at persons is a reference to a communication being addressed to persons generally (for example where it is contained in a television broadcast or web site);
- (d) “communicate” includes causing a communication to be made or directed;
- (e) a “recipient” of a communication is the person to whom the communication is made or, in the case of a non-real time communication which is directed at persons generally, any person who reads or hears the communication;

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

(f) “electronic commerce communication” means a communication, the making of which constitutes the provision of an information society service;

F19(g) .....

F20(h) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F19** Art. 6(g) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **164** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)

**F20** Art. 6(h) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **164** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)

**Interpretation: real time communications** **U.K.**

7.—(1) In this Order, references to a real time communication are references to any communication made in the course of a personal visit, telephone conversation or other interactive dialogue.

(2) A non-real time communication is a communication not falling within paragraph (1).

(3) For the purposes of this Order, non-real time communications include communications made by letter or e-mail or contained in a publication.

(4) For the purposes of this Order, the factors in paragraph (5) are to be treated as indications that a communication is a non-real time communication.

(5) The factors are that—

- (a) the communication is made to or directed at more than one recipient in identical terms (save for details of the recipient's identity);
- (b) the communication is made or directed by way of a system which in the normal course constitutes or creates a record of the communication which is available to the recipient to refer to at a later time;
- (c) the communication is made or directed by way of a system which in the normal course does not enable or require the recipient to respond immediately to it.

**Interpretation: solicited and unsolicited real time communications** **U.K.**

8.—(1) A real time communication is solicited where it is made in the course of a personal visit, telephone call or other interactive dialogue if that call, visit or dialogue—

- (a) was initiated by the recipient of the communication; or
- (b) takes place in response to an express request from the recipient of the communication.

(2) A real time communication is unsolicited where it is made otherwise than as described in paragraph (1).

(3) For the purposes of paragraph (1)—

- (a) a person is not to be treated as expressly requesting a call, visit or dialogue—
  - (i) because he omits to indicate that he does not wish to receive any or any further visits or calls or to engage in any or any further dialogue;

- (ii) because he agrees to standard terms that state that such visits, calls or dialogue will take place, unless he has signified clearly that, in addition to agreeing to the terms, he is willing for them to take place;
  - (b) a communication is solicited only if it is clear from all the circumstances when the call, visit or dialogue is initiated or requested that during the course of the visit, call or dialogue communications will be made concerning the kind of controlled activities or investments [<sup>F21</sup>or controlled claims management activities] to which the communications in fact made relate;
  - (c) it is immaterial whether the express request was made before or after this article comes into force.
- (4) Where a real time communication is solicited by a recipient (“R”), it is treated as having also been solicited by any other person to whom it is made at the same time as it is made to R if that other recipient is—
- (a) a close relative of R; or
  - (b) expected to engage in any investment activity [<sup>F22</sup>or any claims management activity] jointly with R.

**Textual Amendments**

- F21** Words in art. 8(3)(b) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **11(a)**
- F22** Words in art. 8(4)(b) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **11(b)**

**Interpretation: outgoing electronic commerce communications** **U.K.**

<sup>F23</sup>**8A.** . . . . .

**Textual Amendments**

- F23** Art. 8A omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **165** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)

**Degree of prominence to be given to required indications** **U.K.**

- 9.** Where a communication must, if it is to fall within any provision of this Order, be accompanied by an indication of any matter, the indication must be presented to the recipient—
- (a) in a way that can be easily understood; and
  - (b) in such manner as, depending on the means by which the communication is made or directed, is best calculated to bring the matter in question to the attention of the recipient and to allow him to consider it.

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

**Application to qualifying contracts of insurance** **U.K.**

**10.**—(1) Nothing in this Order exempts from the application of the financial promotion restriction a communication which invites or induces a person to enter into a qualifying contract of insurance with a person who is not—

- (a) an authorised person;
- (b) an exempt person who is exempt in relation to effecting or carrying out contracts of insurance of the class to which the communication relates;

<sup>F24</sup>(c) .....

<sup>F25</sup>(d) .....

- (e) a company authorised to carry on insurance business of the class to which the communication relates in any country or territory which is listed in Schedule 2.

(2) In this article, references to a class of insurance are references to the class of insurance contract described in Schedule 1 to the Regulated Activities Order into which the effecting or carrying out of the contract to which the communication relates would fall.

**Textual Amendments**

- F24** Art. 10(1)(c) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019](#) (S.I. 2019/632), regs. 1(3), **166(a)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F25** Art. 10(1)(d) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019](#) (S.I. 2019/632), regs. 1(3), **166(b)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)

**Combination of different exemptions** **U.K.**

**11.**—(1) In respect of a communication relating to—

- (a) a controlled activity falling within paragraph 2 of Schedule 1 carried on in relation to a qualifying contract of insurance; or
- (b) a controlled activity falling within any of paragraphs 3 to [<sup>F26</sup>11 ][<sup>F26</sup>11A] of Schedule 1,

a person may rely on the application of one or more of the exemptions in Parts IV and VI.

(2) In respect of a communication relating to—

- (a) an activity falling within paragraph 1 of Schedule 1; or
- (b) a relevant insurance activity,

a person may rely on one or more of the exemptions in Parts IV and V; and, where a communication relates to any such activity and also to an activity mentioned in paragraph (1)(a) or (b), a person may rely on one or more of the exemptions in Parts IV and V in respect of the former activity and on one or more of the exemptions in Parts V and VI in respect of the latter activity.

**Textual Amendments**

- F26** Word in art. 11(1)(b) substituted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018](#) (S.I. 2018/1253), arts. 1(2)(3), **12**



## PART IV U.K.

### *Exempt Communications: All Controlled Activities*

#### Communications to overseas recipients U.K.

12.—(1) Subject to [F27 paragraphs (2) and (7)] [F27 paragraphs (2), (7) and (8)], the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication—

- (a) which is made (whether from inside or outside the United Kingdom) to a person who receives the communication outside the United Kingdom; or
  - (b) which is directed (whether from inside or outside the United Kingdom) only at persons outside the United Kingdom.
- (2) Paragraph (1) does not apply to an unsolicited real time communication unless—
- (a) it is made from a place outside the United Kingdom; and
  - (b) it is made for the purposes of a business which is carried on outside the United Kingdom and which is not carried on in the United Kingdom.
- (3) For the purposes of paragraph (1)(b)—
- (a) if the conditions set out in paragraph (4)(a), (b), (c) and (d) are met, a communication directed from a place inside the United Kingdom is to be regarded as directed only at persons outside the United Kingdom;
  - (b) if the conditions set out in paragraph (4)(c) and (d) are met, a communication directed from a place outside the United Kingdom is to be regarded as directed only at persons outside the United Kingdom;
  - (c) in any other case where one or more of the conditions in paragraph (4)(a) to (e) are met, that fact is to be taken into account in determining whether or not a communication is to be regarded as directed only at persons outside the United Kingdom (but a communication may still be regarded as directed only at persons outside the United Kingdom even if none of the conditions in paragraph (4) is met).
- (4) The conditions are that—
- (a) the communication is accompanied by an indication that it is directed only at persons outside the United Kingdom;
  - (b) the communication is accompanied by an indication that it must not be acted upon by persons in the United Kingdom;
  - (c) the communication is not referred to in, or directly accessible from, any other communication made to a person or directed at persons in the United Kingdom by the person directing the communication;
  - (d) there are in place proper systems and procedures to prevent recipients in the United Kingdom (other than those to whom the communication might otherwise lawfully have been made by the person directing it or a member of the same group) engaging in the investment activity to which the communication relates with the person directing the communication, a close relative of his or a member of the same group;
  - (e) the communication is included in—
    - (i) a web site, newspaper, journal, magazine or periodical publication which is principally accessed in or intended for a market outside the United Kingdom;
    - (ii) a radio or television broadcast or teletext service transmitted principally for reception outside the United Kingdom.

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) For the purpose of paragraph (1)(b), a communication may be treated as directed only at persons outside the United Kingdom even if—
- (a) it is also directed, for the purposes of article 19(1)(b), at investment professionals falling within article 19(5) (but disregarding paragraph (6) of that article for this purpose);
  - (b) it is also directed, for the purposes of article 49(1)(b), at high net worth persons to whom article 49 applies (but disregarding paragraph (2)(e) of that article for this purpose) and it relates to a controlled activity to which article 49 applies;
  - (c) it is a communication to which article 31 applies.
- (6) Where a communication falls within paragraph (5)(a) or (b)—
- (a) the condition in paragraph (4)(a) is to be construed as requiring an indication that the communication is directed only at persons outside the United Kingdom or persons having professional experience in matters relating to investments or high net worth persons (as the case may be);
  - (b) the condition in paragraph (4)(b) is to be construed as requiring an indication that the communication must not be acted upon by persons in the United Kingdom except by persons who have professional experience in matters relating to investments or who are not high net worth persons (as the case may be);
  - (c) the condition in paragraph (4)(c) will not apply where the other communication referred to in that paragraph is made to a person or directed at a person in the United Kingdom to whom paragraph (5) applies.

<sup>F28</sup>(7) .....

[<sup>F29</sup>(8) Paragraph (1) does not apply to any communication in respect of a controlled claims management activity.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F27** Words in art. 12(1) substituted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **13(a)**

**F28** Art. 12(7) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **167** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by [S.I. 2020/1301](#), regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in [S.I. 2019/680](#), reg. 11 (as amended by [S.I. 2019/1212](#), regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)

**F29** Art. 12(8) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **13(b)**

**Communications from customers and potential customers** U.K.

- 13.—**(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication made by or on behalf of a person (“customer”) to one other person (“supplier”)—
- (a) in order to obtain information about a controlled investment [<sup>F30</sup>or controlled claims management activity] available from or a controlled service provided by the supplier; [<sup>F31</sup>or]
  - (b) in order that the customer can acquire a controlled investment from that supplier or be supplied with a controlled service by that supplier[<sup>F32</sup>; or]

[<sup>F33</sup>(c) in order that the customer can be supplied with services in respect of a controlled claims management activity by that supplier.]

(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1), a controlled service is a service the provision of which constitutes engaging in a controlled activity by the supplier.

#### Textual Amendments

- F30** Words in art. 13(1)(a) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **14(a)(i)**
- F31** Word in art. 13(1)(a) omitted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **14(a)(ii)**
- F32** Word in art. 13(1)(b) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **14(b)**
- F33** Art. 13(1)(c) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **14(c)**

#### Follow up non-real time communications and solicited real time communications **U.K.**

14.—(1) Where a person makes or directs a communication (“the first communication”) which is exempt from the financial promotion restriction because, in compliance with the requirements of another provision of this Order, it is accompanied by certain indications or contains certain information, then the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any subsequent communication which complies with the requirements of paragraph (2).

- (2) The requirements of this paragraph are that the subsequent communication—
- is a non-real time communication or a solicited real time communication;
  - is made by, or on behalf of, the same person who made the first communication;
  - is made to a recipient of the first communication;
  - relates to the same controlled activity and the same controlled investment [<sup>F34</sup>or relates to the same controlled claims management activity] as the first communication; and
  - is made within 12 months of the recipient receiving the first communication.

(3) The provisions of this article only apply in the case of a person who makes or directs a communication on behalf of another where the first communication is made by that other person.

(4) Where a person makes or directs a communication on behalf of another person in reliance on the exemption contained in this article the person on whose behalf the communication was made or directed remains responsible for the content of that communication.

(5) A communication made or directed before this article comes into force is to be treated as a first communication falling within paragraph (1) if it would have fallen within that paragraph had it been made or directed after this article comes into force.

#### Textual Amendments

- F34** Words in art. 14(2)(d) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **15**

**Introductions** **U.K.**

**15.**—(1) If the requirements of paragraph (2) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is made with a view to or for the purposes of introducing the recipient to—

- (a) an authorised person who carries on the controlled activity to which the communication relates; or
- (b) an exempt person where the communication relates to a controlled activity which is also a regulated activity in relation to which he is an exempt person.

[<sup>F35</sup>(1A) But paragraph (1) does not apply to any communication made with a view to or for the purpose of an introduction to a person who carries on an activity of the kind specified by—

- (a) paragraph 4B of Schedule 1;
- (b) paragraph 4C of that Schedule;
- (c) paragraph 11 of that Schedule, to the extent that it relates to that paragraph 4B or that paragraph 4C.

[ paragraph 11A of that Schedule.]]  
<sup>F36</sup>(d)

(2) The requirements of this paragraph are that—

- (a) the maker of the communication (“A”) is not a close relative of, nor a member of the same group as, the person to whom the introduction is, or is to be, made;
- (b) A does not receive from any person other than the recipient any pecuniary reward or other advantage arising out of his making the introduction; and
- (c) it is clear in all the circumstances that the recipient, in his capacity as an investor, is not seeking and has not sought advice from A as to the merits of the recipient engaging in investment activity (or, if the client has sought such advice, A has declined to give it, but has recommended that the recipient seek such advice from an authorised person).

**Textual Amendments**

**F35** Art. 15(1A) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(2)**

**F36** Art. 15(1A)(d) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **16**

**Exempt persons** **U.K.**

**16.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which—

- (a) is a non-real time communication or a solicited real time communication;
- (b) is made or directed by an exempt person; and
- (c) is for the purposes of that exempt person's business of carrying on a controlled activity [<sup>F37</sup>or controlled claims management activity] which is also a regulated activity in relation to which he is an exempt person.

[<sup>F38</sup>(1A) The financial promotion restriction also does not apply to any communication which is—

- (a) a non-real time communication or a solicited real time communication;

- (b) made by a person who is an appointed representative (within the meaning of section 39(2) of the Act) and is carrying on an activity to which sections 20(1) and (1A) and 23(1A) of the Act do not apply by virtue of section 39(1D); and
  - (c) made for the purposes of that person's business of carrying on a controlled activity which is also a regulated activity to which sections 20(1) and (1A) and 23(1A) of the Act do not apply by virtue of section 39(1D).]
- (2) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any unsolicited real time communication made by a person ("AR") who is an appointed representative (within the meaning of section 39(2) of the Act) where—
- (a) the communication is made by AR in carrying on the business—
    - (i) for which his principal ("P") has accepted responsibility for the purposes of section 39 of the Act; and
    - (ii) in relation to which AR is exempt from the general prohibition by virtue of that section [F39 or in relation to which sections 20(1) and (1A) and 23(1A) of the Act do not apply by virtue of that section]; and
  - (b) the communication is one which, if it were made by P, would comply with any rules made [F40 by the FCA under section 137R] of the Act (financial promotion rules) which are relevant to a communication of that kind.

#### Textual Amendments

- F37** Words in art. 16(1)(c) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **17**
- F38** Art. 16(1A) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(3)**
- F39** Words in art. 16(2)(a)(ii) inserted (1.9.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) \(No. 3\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1765\)](#), arts. 1, **6(2)**
- F40** Words in art. 16(2)(b) substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 108(a)**

#### Generic promotions **U.K.**

17. The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which—
- (a) does not identify (directly or indirectly) a person who provides the controlled investment to which the communication relates; [F41 and]
  - (b) does not identify (directly or indirectly) any person as a person who carries on a controlled activity in relation to that investment [F42; and]
  - [F43 (c) does not identify (directly or indirectly) any person as a person who carries on a controlled claims management activity.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F41** Word in art. 17(a) omitted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **18(a)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

- F42** Word in art. 17(b) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **18(b)**
- F43** Art. 17(c) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **18(c)**

### Communications caused to be made or directed by unauthorised persons **U.K.**

**17A.**—(1) If a condition in paragraph (2) is met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to a communication caused to be made or directed by an unauthorised person which is made or directed by an authorised person.

- (2) The conditions in this paragraph are that—
- (a) the authorised person prepared the content of the communication; or
  - (b) it is a real-time communication.

### Mere conduits **U.K.**

**18.**—(1) Subject to paragraph (4), the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is made or directed by a person who acts as a mere conduit for it.

- (2) A person acts as a mere conduit for a communication if—
- (a) he communicates it in the course of an activity carried on by him, the principal purpose of which is transmitting or receiving material provided to him by others;
  - (b) the content of the communication is wholly devised by another person; and
  - (c) the nature of the service provided by him in relation to the communication is such that he does not select, modify or otherwise exercise control over its content prior to its transmission or receipt.

(3) For the purposes of paragraph (2)(c) a person does not select, modify or otherwise exercise control over the content of a communication merely by removing or having the power to remove material—

- (a) which is, or is alleged to be, illegal, defamatory or in breach of copyright;
- (b) in response to a request to a body which is empowered by or under any enactment to make such a request; or
- (c) when otherwise required to do so by law.

(4) Nothing in paragraph (1) prevents the application of the financial promotion restriction in so far as it relates to the person who has caused the communication to be made or directed.

- (5) This article does not apply to an electronic commerce communication.

### Electronic commerce communications: mere conduits, caching and hosting **U.K.**

**18A.** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to an electronic commerce communication in circumstances where—

- (a) the making of the communication constitutes the provision of an information society service of a kind falling within [<sup>F44</sup>regulation 17(1), 18 or 19 of the Electronic Commerce (EC Directive) Regulations 2002] (“mere conduit”, “caching” and “hosting”); and
- (b) [<sup>F45</sup>the conditions mentioned in—

- (i) regulation 17(1)(a) to (c) of those Regulations (where regulation 17 is the relevant regulation),
  - (ii) regulation 18(b)(i) to (v) of those Regulations (where regulation 18 is the relevant regulation), or
  - (iii) regulation 19(a)(i) and (ii) of those Regulations (where regulation 19 is the relevant regulation),
- to the extent] that they are applicable at the time of, or prior to, the making of the communication, are or have been met at that time.

#### Textual Amendments

- F44** Words in art. 18A(a) substituted (31.12.2020) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **168(2)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F45** Words in art. 18A(b) substituted (31.12.2020) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **168(3)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)

#### Investment professionals **U.K.**

- 19.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which—
- (a) is made only to recipients whom the person making the communication believes on reasonable grounds to be investment professionals; or
  - (b) may reasonably be regarded as directed only at such recipients.
- (2) For the purposes of paragraph (1)(b), if all the conditions set out in paragraph (4)(a) to (c) are met in relation to the communication, it is to be regarded as directed only at investment professionals.
- (3) In any other case in which one or more of the conditions set out in paragraph (4)(a) to (c) are met, that fact is to be taken into account in determining whether the communication is directed only at investment professionals (but a communication may still be regarded as so directed even if none of the conditions in paragraph (4) is met).
- (4) The conditions are that—
- (a) the communication is accompanied by an indication that it is directed at persons having professional experience in matters relating to investments and that any investment or investment activity to which it relates is available only to such persons or will be engaged in only with such persons;
  - (b) the communication is accompanied by an indication that persons who do not have professional experience in matters relating to investments should not rely on it;
  - (c) there are in place proper systems and procedures to prevent recipients other than investment professionals engaging in the investment activity to which the communication relates with the person directing the communication, a close relative of his or a member of the same group.
- (5) “Investment professionals” means—
- (a) an authorised person;
  - (b) an exempt person where the communication relates to a controlled activity which is a regulated activity in relation to which the person is exempt;

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) any other person—
  - (i) whose ordinary activities involve him in carrying on the controlled activity to which the communication relates for the purpose of a business carried on by him; or
  - (ii) who it is reasonable to expect will carry on such activity for the purposes of a business carried on by him;
- (d) a government, local authority (whether in the United Kingdom or elsewhere) or an international organisation;
- (e) a person (“A”) who is a director, officer or employee of a person (“B”) falling within any of sub-paragraphs (a) to (d) where the communication is made to A in that capacity and where A's responsibilities when acting in that capacity involve him in the carrying on by B of controlled activities.

(6) For the purposes of paragraph (1), a communication may be treated as made only to or directed only at investment professionals even if it is also made to or directed at other persons to whom it may lawfully be communicated.

[<sup>F46</sup>(7) Paragraph (1) does not apply to any communication in respect of a controlled claims management activity.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F46** Art. 19(7) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **19**

#### Communications by journalists **U.K.**

**20.**—(1) Subject to paragraph (2), the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any non-real time communication if—

- (a) the content of the communication is devised by a person acting in the capacity of a journalist;
- (b) the communication is contained in a qualifying publication; and
- (c) in the case of a communication requiring disclosure, one of the conditions in paragraph (2) is met.

(2) The conditions in this paragraph are that—

- (a) the communication is accompanied by an indication explaining the nature of the author's financial interest or that of a member of his family (as the case may be);
- (b) the authors are subject to proper systems and procedures which prevent the publication of communications requiring disclosure without the explanation referred to in sub-paragraph (a); or
- (c) the qualifying publication in which the communication appears falls within the remit of—
  - (i) the Code of Practice issued by the Press Complaints Commission;
  - (ii) the OFCOM Broadcasting Code; or
  - (iii) the Producers' Guidelines issued by the British Broadcasting Corporation.

(3) For the purposes of this article, a communication requires disclosure if—

- (a) an author of the communication or a member of his family is likely to obtain a financial benefit or avoid a financial loss if people act in accordance with the invitation or inducement contained in the communication;



- (b) the communication relates to a controlled investment of a kind falling within paragraph (4) [F47 or to a controlled claims management activity]; and
  - (c) the communication identifies directly a person who issues or provides the controlled investment [F48 or who carries on or engages in the controlled claims management activity] to which the communication relates.
- (4) A controlled investment falls within this paragraph if it is—
- (a) an investment falling within paragraph 14 of Schedule 1 (shares or stock in share capital);
  - (b) an investment falling within paragraph 21 of that Schedule (options) to acquire or dispose of an investment falling within sub-paragraph (a);
  - (c) an investment falling within paragraph 22 of that Schedule (futures) being rights under a contract for the sale of an investment falling within sub-paragraph (a); or
  - (d) an investment falling within paragraph 23 of that Schedule (contracts for differences etc.) being rights under a contract relating to, or to fluctuations in, the value or price of an investment falling within sub-paragraph (a).
- (5) For the purposes of this article—
- (a) the authors of the communication are the person who devises the content of the communication and the person who is responsible for deciding to include the communication in the qualifying publication;
  - (b) a “qualifying publication” is a publication or service of the kind mentioned in paragraph (1) or (2) of article 54 of the Regulated Activities Order and which is of the nature described in that article, and for the purposes of this article, a certificate given under paragraph (3) of article 54 of that Order and not revoked is conclusive evidence of the matters certified;
  - (c) the members of a person's family are his spouse [F49 or civil partner] and any children of his under the age of 18 years.

#### Textual Amendments

- F47** Words in art. 20(3)(b) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **20(a)**
- F48** Words in art. 20(3)(c) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **20(b)**
- F49** Words in art. 20(5)(c) inserted (21.12.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/3392\)](#), arts. 1, **2(3)**

#### Promotion broadcast by company director etc. **U.K.**

**20A.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to a communication which is communicated as part of a qualifying service by a person (“D”) who is a director or employee of an undertaking (“U”) where—

- (a) the communication invites or induces the recipient to acquire—
  - (i) a controlled investment of the kind falling within article 20(4) which is issued by U (or by an undertaking in the same group as U); or
  - (ii) a controlled investment issued or provided by an authorised person in the same group as U;
- (b) the communication—

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) comprises words which are spoken by D and not broadcast, transmitted or displayed in writing; or
  - (ii) is displayed in writing only because it forms part of an interactive dialogue to which D is a party and in the course of which D is expected to respond immediately to questions put by a recipient of the communication;
  - (c) the communication is not part of an organised marketing campaign; and
  - (d) the communication is accompanied by an indication that D is a director or employee (as the case may be) of U.
- (2) For the purposes of this article, a “qualifying service” is a service—
- (a) which is broadcast or transmitted in the form of television or radio programmes; or
  - (b) displayed on a web site (or similar system for the electronic display of information) comprising regularly updated news and information,

provided that the principal purpose of the service, taken as a whole and including any advertisements and other promotional material contained in it, is neither of the purposes described in article 54(1) (a) or (b) of the Regulated Activities Order.

(3) For the purposes of paragraph (2), a certificate given under article 54(3) of the Regulated Activities Order and not revoked is conclusive evidence of the matters certified.

#### **Incoming electronic commerce communications** **U.K.**

<sup>F50</sup>**20B.** . . . . .

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F50** Art. 20B omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **169** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by [S.I. 2020/1301](#), regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in [S.I. 2019/680](#), reg. 11 (as amended by [S.I. 2019/1212](#), regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)

#### **[<sup>F51</sup>Communications required by the PRIIPs regulation: key information document** **U.K.**

**20C.** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication required by Article 13 of Regulation (EU) No 1286/2014 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 26 November 2014 on key information documents for packaged retail and insurance-based investment products.]

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Art. 20C inserted (1.1.2018) by [The Packaged Retail and Insurance-based Investment Products Regulations 2017 \(S.I. 2017/1127\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 2 para. 5**

## PART V U.K.

### *Exempt Communications: Deposits and Insurance*

#### **Interpretation: relevant insurance activity U.K.**

21. In this Part, a “relevant insurance activity” means a controlled activity falling within paragraph 2 of Schedule 1 carried on in relation to an investment falling within paragraph 13 of that Schedule where that investment is not a qualifying contract of insurance.

#### **Deposits: non-real time communications U.K.**

22.—(1) If the requirements of paragraph (2) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any non-real time communication which relates to a controlled activity falling within paragraph 1 of Schedule 1 [F52 except where that controlled activity relates to a structured deposit].

(2) The requirements of this paragraph are that the communication is accompanied by an indication—

- (a) of the full name of the person with whom the investment which is the subject of the communication is to be made (“deposit-taker”);
- (b) of the country or territory in which a deposit-taker that is a body corporate is incorporated (described as such);
- (c) if different, of the country or territory in which the deposit-taker's principal place of business is situated (described as such);
- (d) whether or not the deposit-taker is regulated in respect of his deposit-taking business;
- (e) if the deposit-taker is so regulated, of the name of the regulator in the deposit-taker's principal place of business, or if there is more than one such regulator, the prudential regulator;
- (f) whether any transaction to which the communication relates would, if entered into by the recipient and the deposit-taker, fall within the jurisdiction of any dispute resolution scheme or deposit guarantee scheme and if so, identifying each such scheme;
- (g) the necessary capital information.

(3) In this article—

“full name”, in relation to a person, means the name under which that person carries on business and, if different, that person's corporate name;

“liabilities” includes provisions where such provisions have not been deducted from the value of the assets;

“necessary capital information” means—

- (a) in relation to a deposit-taker which is a body corporate, either the amount of its paid up capital and reserves, described as such, or a statement that the amount of its paid up capital and reserves exceeds a particular amount (stating it);
- (b) in relation to a deposit-taker which is not a body corporate, either the amount of the total assets less liabilities (described as such) or a statement that the amount of its total assets exceeds a particular amount (stating it) and that its total liabilities do not exceed a particular amount (stating it).

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F52** Words in art. 22(1) inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(3)**

#### Deposits: real time communications **U.K.**

**23.** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any real time communication (whether solicited or unsolicited) which relates to an activity falling within paragraph 1 of Schedule 1 [<sup>F53</sup>except where that controlled activity relates to a structured deposit].

#### Textual Amendments

**F53** Words in art. 23 inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(4)**

#### Relevant insurance activity: non-real time communications **U.K.**

**24.—(1)** If the requirements of paragraph (2) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any non-real time communication which relates to a relevant insurance activity.

(2) The requirements of this paragraph are that the communication is accompanied by an indication—

- (a) of the full name of the person with whom the investment which is the subject of the communication is to be made (“the insurer”);
- (b) of the country or territory in which the insurer is incorporated (described as such);
- (c) if different, of the country or territory in which the insurer's principal place of business is situated (described as such);
- (d) whether or not the insurer is regulated in respect of its insurance business;
- (e) if the insurer is so regulated, of the name of the regulator of the insurer in its principal place of business or, if there is more than one such regulator, the name of the prudential regulator;
- (f) whether any transaction to which the communication relates would, if entered into by the recipient and the insurer, fall within the jurisdiction of any dispute resolution scheme or compensation scheme and if so, identifying each such scheme.

(3) In this article “full name”, in relation to a person, means the name under which that person carries on business and, if different, that person's corporate name.

#### Relevant insurance activity: non-real time communications: reinsurance and large risks **U.K.**

**25.—(1)** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any non-real time communication which relates to a relevant insurance activity and concerns only—

- (a) a contract of reinsurance; or
- (b) a contract that covers large risks.

(2) “Large risks” means—

- (a) risks falling within paragraph 4 (railway rolling stock), 5 (aircraft), 6 (ships), 7 (goods in transit), 11 (aircraft liability) or 12 (liability of ships) of Schedule 1 to the Regulated Activities Order;
- (b) risks falling within paragraph 14 (credit) or 15 (suretyship) of that Schedule provided that the risks relate to a business carried on by the recipient;
- (c) risks falling within paragraph 3 (land vehicles), 8 (fire and natural forces), 9 (damage to property), 10 (motor vehicle liability), 13 (general liability) or 16 (miscellaneous financial loss) of that Schedule provided that the risks relate to a business carried on by the recipient and that the condition specified in paragraph (3) is met in relation to that business.
- (3) The condition specified in this paragraph is that at least two of the three following criteria were exceeded in the most recent financial year for which information is available prior to the making of the communication—
- [<sup>F54</sup>(a) the aggregate of the amounts shown as assets in the balance sheet of the business was 6.2 million euros;]
- (b) the net turnover (within the meaning given to “turnover” by [<sup>F55</sup>section 474(1) of the 2006 Act] was 12.8 million euros;
- (c) the number of employees (within the meaning given by [<sup>F56</sup>section 465(6) of the 2006 Act] was 250;
- and for a financial year which is a company's financial year but not in fact a year, the net turnover of the recipient shall be proportionately adjusted.
- (4) For the purposes of paragraph (3), where the recipient is a member of a group for which consolidated accounts <sup>F57</sup>... are drawn up, the question whether the condition met in that paragraph is met is to be determined by reference to those accounts.

#### Textual Amendments

- F54** Art. 25(3)(a) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(5)(a)**
- F55** Words in art. 25(3)(b) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(5)(b)**
- F56** Words in art. 25(3)(c) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(5)(c)**
- F57** Words in art. 25(4) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **170** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)

#### Relevant insurance activity: real time communication **U.K.**

**26.** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any real time communication (whether solicited or unsolicited) which relates to a relevant insurance activity.

**PART VI** U.K.*Exempt Communications: Certain Controlled Activities***Application of exemptions in this Part** U.K.

27. Except where otherwise stated, the exemptions in this Part apply to communications which relate to—

- (a) a controlled activity falling within paragraph 2 of Schedule 1 carried on in relation to a qualifying contract of insurance;
- (b) controlled activities falling within any of paragraphs 3 to 11 of Schedule 1.
- <sup>F58</sup>(c) a controlled claims management activity.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F58** Art. 27(c) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **21**

**One off non-real time communications and solicited real time communications** U.K.

28.—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to a one off communication which is either a non-real time communication or a solicited real time communication.

(2) If all the conditions set out in paragraph (3) are met in relation to a communication it is to be regarded as a one off communication. In any other case in which one or more of those conditions are met, that fact is to be taken into account in determining whether the communication is a one off communication (but a communication may still be regarded as a one off communication even if none of the conditions in paragraph (3) is met).

(3) The conditions are that—

- (a) the communication is made only to one recipient or only to one group of recipients in the expectation that they would engage in any investment activity [<sup>F59</sup>or controlled claims management activity] jointly;
- (b) the identity of the product or service to which the communication relates has been determined having regard to the particular circumstances of the recipient;
- (c) the communication is not part of an organised marketing campaign.

**Textual Amendments**

**F59** Words in art. 28(3)(a) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **22**

**One off unsolicited real time communications** U.K.

28A.—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to an unsolicited real time communication if the conditions in paragraph (2) are met.

(2) The conditions in this paragraph are that—

- (a) the communication is a one off communication;

- (b) the communicator believes on reasonable grounds that the recipient understands the risks associated with engaging in the investment activity to which the communication relates;
- (c) at the time that the communication is made, the communicator believes on reasonable grounds that the recipient would expect to be contacted by him in relation to the investment activity to which the communication relates.

(3) Paragraphs (2) and (3) of article 28 apply in determining whether a communication is a one off communication for the purposes of this article as they apply for the purposes of article 28.

<sup>F60</sup>(4) Paragraph (1) does not apply to any communication in respect of a controlled claims management activity.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F60** Art. 28A(4) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), 23

#### Real time communications: introductions<sup>F61</sup>... **U.K.**

**28B.**—(1) If the requirements of paragraph (2) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any real time communication which—

- (a) relates to a controlled activity falling within <sup>F62</sup>paragraph <sup>F63</sup>[4B, 4C, 5A, 5B,] 10, 10A, 10B, <sup>F64</sup>[10BA, 10BB,] 10C, 10D, 10E, 10F, <sup>F65</sup>[10G, 10H, 10I, 10J or 10K]] of Schedule 1; and
- (b) is made for the purpose of, or with a view to, introducing the recipient to a person (“N”) who is—
  - (i) an authorised person who carries on the controlled activity to which the communication relates,
  - (ii) an appointed representative, where the controlled activity to which the communication relates is also a regulated activity in respect of which he is exempt from the general prohibition <sup>F66</sup>[or in relation to which sections 20(1) and (1A) and 23(1A) of the Act do not apply by virtue of section 39(1D)]<sup>F67</sup>[or in relation to which sections 20(1) and (1A) and 23(1A) of the Act do not apply], or
  - (iii) an overseas person who carries on the controlled activity to which the communication relates.

(2) The requirements of this paragraph are that the maker of the communication (“M”)—

- (a) does not receive any money, other than money payable to M on his own account, paid by the recipient for or in connection with any transaction which the recipient enters into with or through N as a result of the introduction; and
- (b) before making the introduction, discloses to the recipient such of the information mentioned in paragraph (3) as applies to M.

(3) That information is—

- (a) that M is a member of the same group as N;
- (b) details of any payment which M will receive from N, by way of fee or commission, for introducing the recipient to N;
- (c) an indication of any other reward or advantage received or to be received by M that arises out of his making introductions to N.

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

(4) In this article, “overseas person” means a person who carries on controlled activities which fall within paragraph [<sup>F68</sup>4B, 4C, 5A, 5B,] 10, 10A, [<sup>F69</sup>10B, 10BA or 10BB] of Schedule 1, but who does not carry on any such activity, or offer to do so, from a permanent place of business maintained by him in the United Kingdom.

#### Textual Amendments

- F61** Words in art. 28B title deleted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **35(2)**
- F62** Words in art. 28B(1)(a) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), 35(3)
- F63** Words in art. 28B(1)(a) inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **17(2)(a)**
- F64** Words in art. 28B(1)(a) inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **17(2)(b)**
- F65** Words in art. 28B(1)(a) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **30(2)**
- F66** Words in art. 28B(1)(b)(ii) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(4)(a)**
- F67** Words in art. 28B(1)(b)(ii) inserted (1.9.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) \(No. 3\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1765\)](#), arts. 1, **6(3)**
- F68** Words in art. 28B(4) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(4)(b)(i)**
- F69** Words in art. 28B(4) substituted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(4)(b)(ii)**

#### Communications required or authorised by enactments **U.K.**

**29.—**(1) Subject to paragraph (2), the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is required or authorised by or under any enactment other than the Act.

(2) This article does not apply to a communication which relates to a controlled activity falling within paragraph [<sup>F70</sup>4B,] 10, 10A [<sup>F71</sup>, 10B, 10BA or 10BB] of Schedule 1 or within paragraph 11 in so far as it relates to that activity.

[<sup>F72</sup>(3) A communication which may be made because a condition imposed by regulation 49 or 50 of the Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 has been met, is to be treated as authorised by those Regulations for the purposes of paragraph (1) in so far as it is made to a professional investor (as defined in regulation 2(1) of those Regulations).

(4) A communication permitted by Article 2.2, 4 or 14.3 of Regulation (EU) No 345/2013 of the European Parliament and the Council of 17 April 2013 on European venture capital funds, or by Article 2.2, 4 or 15.3 of Regulation (EU) No 346/2013 of the European Parliament and the Council of 17 April 2013 on European social entrepreneurship funds, is to be treated as authorised by an enactment other than the Act for the purposes of paragraph (1).]



[<sup>F73</sup>(4A) The reference in paragraph (4) to Regulation (EU) 345/2013 is a reference to that instrument as it has effect at the beginning of the day on which the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019 are made (but see regulation 2 of the European Union (Withdrawal) Act 2018 (Consequential Modifications and Repeals and Revocations) Regulations 2019, which may further update the reference).]

[<sup>F74</sup>(5) A communication permitted by Article 30 or 31 of Regulation (EU) No 2015/760 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 29th April 2015 on European Long-term Investment Funds is to be treated as authorised by an enactment other than the Act for the purposes of paragraph (1).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F70** Word in art. 29(2) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014](#) (S.I. 2014/366), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(5)(a)**
- F71** Words in art. 29(2) substituted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014](#) (S.I. 2014/366), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(5)(b)**
- F72** Art. 29(3)(4) inserted (22.7.2013) by [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/1773), reg. 1, **Sch. 2 para. 19(a)**
- F73** Art. 29(4A) inserted (23.3.2019) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019](#) (S.I. 2019/632), regs. 1(2)(f), **171** (with reg. 162(2))
- F74** Art. 29(5) inserted (3.12.2015) by [The European Long-term Investment Funds Regulations 2015](#) (S.I. 2015/1882), regs. 1, **5**

#### Overseas communicators: solicited real time communications **U.K.**

**30.—**(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any solicited real time communication which is made by an overseas communicator from outside the United Kingdom in the course of or for the purposes of his carrying on the business of engaging in relevant investment activities outside the United Kingdom.

(2) In this article—

“overseas communicator” means a person who carries on relevant investment activities outside the United Kingdom but who does not carry on any such activity from a permanent place of business maintained by him in the United Kingdom;

“relevant investment activities” means controlled activities which fall within paragraphs 3 to 7 or 10 to 10B<sup>[F75]</sup>, 10BA or 10BB] of Schedule 1 or, so far as relevant to any of those paragraphs, paragraph 11 of that Schedule.

[<sup>F76</sup>(3) Paragraph (1) does not apply to any communication in respect of a controlled claims management activity.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F75** Words in art. 30(2) inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(2)(6), **17(3)**
- F76** Art. 30(3) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018](#) (S.I. 2018/1253), arts. 1(2)(3), **24**

**Overseas communicators: non-real time communications to previously overseas customers** **U.K.**

**31.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any non-real time communication which is communicated by an overseas communicator from outside the United Kingdom to a previously overseas customer of his.

(2) In this article a “previously overseas customer” means a person with whom the overseas communicator has done business within the period of twelve months ending with the day on which the communication was received (“the earlier business”) and where—

- (a) at the time that the earlier business was done, the customer was neither resident in the United Kingdom nor had a place of business there; or
- (b) at the time the earlier business was done, the overseas communicator had on a former occasion done business with the customer, being business of the same description as the business to which the communication relates, and on that former occasion the customer was neither resident in the United Kingdom nor had a place of business there.

(3) For the purposes of this article, an overseas communicator has done business with a customer if, in the course of carrying on his relevant investment activities outside the United Kingdom, he has—

- (a) effected a transaction, or arranged for a transaction to be effected, with the customer;
- (b) provided, outside the United Kingdom; a service to the customer as described in paragraph 6 of Schedule 1 (whether or not that paragraph was in force at the time the business was done); or
- (c) given, outside the United Kingdom, any advice to the customer as described in paragraph 7 of that Schedule (whether or not that paragraph was in force at the time the business was done).

[<sup>F77</sup>(4) Paragraph (1) does not apply to any communication in respect of a controlled claims management activity.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F77** Art. 31(4) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **25**

**Overseas communicators: unsolicited real time communications to previously overseas customers** **U.K.**

**32.**—(1) If the requirements of paragraphs (2) and (3) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to an unsolicited real time communication which is made by an overseas communicator from outside the United Kingdom to a previously overseas customer of his.

(2) The requirements of this paragraph are that the terms on which previous transactions and services had been effected or provided by the overseas communicator to the previously overseas customer were such that the customer would reasonably expect, at the time that the unsolicited real time communication is made, to be contacted by the overseas communicator in relation to the investment activity to which the communication relates.

(3) The requirements of this paragraph are that the previously overseas customer has been informed by the overseas communicator on an earlier occasion—

- (a) that the protections conferred by or under the Act will not apply to any unsolicited real time communication which is made by the overseas communicator and which relates to that investment activity;
- (b) that the protections conferred by or under the Act may not apply to any investment activity that may be engaged in as a result of the communication; and
- (c) whether any transaction between them resulting from the communication would fall within the jurisdiction of any dispute resolution scheme or compensation scheme or, if there is no such scheme, of that fact.

[<sup>F78</sup>(4) Paragraph (1) does not apply to any communication in respect of a controlled claims management activity.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F78** Art. 32(4) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), 26

#### Overseas communicators: unsolicited real time communications to knowledgeable customers **U.K.**

**33.**—(1) If the requirements of paragraphs (2), (3) and (4) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to an unsolicited real time communication which is made by an overseas communicator from outside the United Kingdom in the course of his carrying on relevant investment activities outside the United Kingdom.

(2) The requirements of this paragraph are that the overseas communicator believes on reasonable grounds that the recipient is sufficiently knowledgeable to understand the risks associated with engaging in the investment activity to which the communication relates.

(3) The requirements of this paragraph are that, in relation to any particular investment activity, the recipient has been informed by the overseas communicator on an earlier occasion—

- (a) that the protections conferred by or under the Act will not apply to any unsolicited real time communication which is made by him and which relates to that activity;
- (b) that the protections conferred by or under the Act may not apply to any investment activity that may be engaged in as a result of the communication; and
- (c) whether any transaction between them resulting from the communication would fall within the jurisdiction of any dispute resolution scheme or compensation scheme or, if there is no such scheme, of that fact.

(4) The requirements of this paragraph are that the recipient, after being given a proper opportunity to consider the information given to him in accordance with paragraph (3), has clearly signified that he understands the warnings referred to in paragraph (3)(a) and (b) and that he accepts that he will not benefit from the protections referred to.

[<sup>F79</sup>(5) Paragraph (1) does not apply to any communication in respect of a controlled claims management activity.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F79** Art. 33(5) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), 27

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

## Governments, central banks etc. **U.K.**

34. The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which—
- (a) is a non-real time communication or a solicited real time communication;
  - (b) is communicated by and relates only to controlled investments issued, or to be issued, by—
    - (i) any government;
    - (ii) any local authority (in the United Kingdom or elsewhere) [<sup>F80</sup>except for a communication which relates to a regulated credit agreement (within the meaning given in article 60B of the Regulated Activities Order (regulated credit agreements)) where entering into the agreement, or exercising or having the right to exercise rights under the agreement, constitutes the carrying on of a regulated activity of the kind specified by article 60B of the Regulated Activities Order and the exclusion in article 72G of that Order (local authorities) does not apply];
    - (iii) any international organisation;
    - (iv) the Bank of England;
    - [<sup>F81</sup>(v) . . . . .
    - (vi) the central bank of any country or territory outside the United Kingdom.

### Textual Amendments

- F80** Words in art. 34(b)(ii) inserted (1.4.2014) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Consumer Credit\) \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) \(No. 2\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/506\)](#), arts. 1(3), **3(2)**
- F81** Art. 34(b)(v) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **172** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by [S.I. 2020/1301](#), regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in [S.I. 2019/680](#), reg. 11 (as amended by [S.I. 2019/1212](#), regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)

## [<sup>F82</sup>Registered societies] **U.K.**

35. The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which—
- (a) is a non-real time communication or a solicited real time communication;
  - (b) is communicated by [<sup>F83</sup>a registered society]; and
  - (c) relates only to an investment falling within paragraph 15 [<sup>F84</sup>or 15A] of Schedule 1 issued, or to be issued, by the society in question.

### Textual Amendments

- F82** Art. 35 heading substituted (1.8.2014) by [The Co-operative and Community Benefit Societies and Credit Unions Act 2010 \(Consequential Amendments\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1815\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. para. 15(2)(a)**
- F83** Words in art. 35(b) substituted (1.8.2014) by [The Co-operative and Community Benefit Societies and Credit Unions Act 2010 \(Consequential Amendments\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1815\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. para. 15(2)(b)**
- F84** Words in art. 35(c) inserted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(b)**

**Nationals of EEA States other than United Kingdom** **U.K.**F85 **36.** .....**Textual Amendments**

**F85** Art. 36 omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019 (S.I. 2019/632), regs. 1(3), **173** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)

**Financial markets** **U.K.**

- 37.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication—
- (a) which is a non-real time communication or a solicited real time communication;
  - (b) which is communicated by a relevant market; and
  - (c) to which paragraph (2) or (3) applies.
- (2) This paragraph applies to a communication if—
- (a) it relates only to facilities provided by the market; and
  - (b) it does not identify (directly or indirectly)—
    - (i) any particular investment issued, or to be issued, by or available from an identified person as one that may be traded or dealt in on the market; or
    - (ii) any particular person as a person through whom transactions on the market may be effected.
- (3) This paragraph applies to a communication if—
- (a) it relates only to a particular investment falling within paragraph 21, 22<sup>F86</sup>, 23 or 23A] of Schedule 1; and
  - (b) it identifies the investment as one that may be traded or dealt in on the market.
- (4) “Relevant market” means a market which—
- [<sup>F87</sup>(za) is a relevant UK market;]
- (a) meets the criteria specified in Part I of Schedule 3; or
  - (b) is specified in, or is established under the rules of an exchange specified in, Part <sup>F88</sup>... III or IV of that Schedule.

**Textual Amendments**

- F86** Words in art. 37(3)(a) substituted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2017 (S.I. 2017/488), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(5)(a)**
- F87** Art. 37(4)(za) inserted (18.10.2021) by The Markets in Financial Instruments, Benchmarks and Financial Promotions (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2021 (S.I. 2021/1074), regs. 1(2), **2(3)**
- F88** Word in art. 37(4)(b) omitted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2017 (S.I. 2017/488), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(5)(b)**

**Persons in the business of placing promotional material** **U.K.**

**38.** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is made to a person whose business it is to place, or arrange for the placing of, promotional material provided that it is communicated so that he can place or arrange for placing it.

**Joint enterprises** **U.K.**

**39.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is made or directed by a participator in a joint enterprise to or at another participator in the same joint enterprise in connection with, or for the purposes of, that enterprise.

(2) “Joint enterprise” means an enterprise into which two or more persons (“the participators”) enter for commercial purposes related to a business or businesses (other than the business of engaging in a controlled activity [<sup>F89</sup> or controlled claims management activity]) carried on by them; and, where a participator is a member of a group, each other member of the group is also to be regarded as a participator in the enterprise.

(3) “Participator” includes potential participator.

**Textual Amendments**

**F89** Words in art. 39(2) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **29**

**Participants in certain recognised collective investment schemes** **U.K.**

**40.** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any non-real time communication or solicited real time communication which is made—

- (a) by a person who is the operator of a scheme recognised under section <sup>F90</sup>...272 of the Act; and
- (b) to persons in the United Kingdom who are participants in any such recognised scheme operated by the person making the communication,

and which relates only to such recognised schemes as are operated by that person or to units in such schemes.

**Textual Amendments**

**F90** Words in art. 40(a) omitted (22.7.2013) by virtue of [The Alternative Investment Fund Managers Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1773\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 2 para. 19(b)**

**Bearer instruments: promotions required or permitted by market rules** **U.K.**

**41.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which—

- (a) is a non-real time communication or a solicited real time communication;
- (b) is communicated by a body corporate (“A”) that is not an open-ended investment company;
- (c) is made to or may reasonably be regarded as directed at persons entitled to bearer instruments issued by A, a parent undertaking of A or a subsidiary undertaking of A; and

- (d) is required or permitted by the rules of a relevant market to be communicated to holders of instruments of a class which consists of or includes the bearer instruments in question.
- (2) “Bearer instrument” means any of the following investments title to which is capable of being transferred by delivery—
- (a) any investment falling within paragraph 14<sup>F91</sup>, 15 or 15A] of Schedule 1;
  - (b) any investment falling within paragraph 17 or 18 of that Schedule which confers rights in respect of an investment falling within paragraph 14<sup>F91</sup>, 15 or 15A].
- (3) For the purposes of this article, a bearer instrument falling within paragraph 17 or 18 of Schedule 1 is treated as issued by the person (“P”) who issued the investment in respect of which the bearer instrument confers rights if it is issued by—
- (a) an undertaking in the same group as P; or
  - (b) a person acting on behalf of, or pursuant to arrangements made with, P.
- (4) “Relevant market”, in relation to instruments of any particular class, means any market on which instruments of that class can be traded or dealt in and which—
- <sup>F92</sup>(za) is a relevant UK market;]
- (a) meets the criteria specified in Part I of Schedule 3; or
  - (b) is specified in, or established under the rules of an exchange specified in, Part<sup>F93</sup>... III of that Schedule.

#### Textual Amendments

- F91** Words in art. 41(2)(a)(b) substituted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(a)(ii)**
- F92** [Art. 41\(4\)\(za\)](#) inserted (18.10.2021) by [The Markets in Financial Instruments, Benchmarks and Financial Promotions \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2021 \(S.I. 2021/1074\)](#), regs. 1(2), **2(4)**
- F93** Words in art. 41(4)(b) omitted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(6)**

#### Bearer instruments: promotions to existing holders **U.K.**

- 42.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which—
- (a) is a non-real time communication or a solicited real time communication;
  - (b) is communicated by a body corporate (“A”) that is not an open-ended investment company;
  - (c) is made to or may reasonably be regarded as directed at persons entitled to bearer instruments issued by A, a parent undertaking of A or a subsidiary undertaking of A;
  - (d) relates only to instruments of a class which consists of or includes either the bearer instruments to which the communication relates or instruments in respect of which those bearer instruments confer rights; and
  - (e) is capable of being accepted or acted on only by persons who are entitled to instruments (whether or not bearer instruments) issued by A, a parent undertaking of A or a subsidiary undertaking of A.
- (2) “Bearer instruments” has the meaning given by article 41.

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

(3) For the purposes of this article, an instrument falling within paragraph 17 or 18 of Schedule 1 is treated as issued by the person (“P”) who issued the investment in respect of which the bearer instrument confers rights if it is issued by—

- (a) an undertaking in the same group as P; or
- (b) a person acting on behalf of, or pursuant to arrangements made with, P.

### Members and creditors of certain bodies corporate **U.K.**

**43.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any non-real time communication or solicited real time communication which is communicated—

- (a) by, or on behalf of, a body corporate (“A”) that is not an open-ended investment company; and
- (b) to persons whom the person making or directing the communication believes on reasonable grounds to be persons to whom paragraph (2) applies,

and which relates only to a relevant investment which is issued or to be issued by A, or by an undertaking (“U”) in the same group as A that is not an open-ended investment company.

(2) This paragraph applies to—

- (a) a creditor or member of A or of U;
- (b) a person who is entitled to a relevant investment which is issued, or to be issued, by A or by U;
- (c) a person who is entitled, whether conditionally or unconditionally, to become a member of A or of U but who has not yet done so;
- (d) a person who is entitled, whether conditionally or unconditionally, to have transferred to him title to a relevant investment which is issued by A or by U but has not yet acquired title to the investment.

(3) “Relevant investment” means—

- (a) an investment falling within paragraph 14<sup>F94</sup>, 15 or 15A] of Schedule 1;
- (b) an investment falling within paragraph 17 or 18 of that Schedule so far as relating to any investments within sub-paragraph (a).

(4) For the purposes of this article, an investment falling within paragraph 17 or 18 of Schedule 1 is treated as issued by the person (“P”) who issued the investment in respect of which the instrument confers rights if it is issued by—

- (a) an undertaking in the same group as P; or
- (b) a person acting on behalf of, or pursuant to arrangements made with, P.

#### Textual Amendments

**F94** Words in art. 43(3)(a) substituted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. para. 9\(a\)\(iii\)](#)

### Members and creditors of open-ended investment companies **U.K.**

**44.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which—

- (a) is a non-real time communication or a solicited real time communication;
- (b) is communicated by, or on behalf of, a body corporate (“A”) that is an open-ended investment company;



- (c) is communicated to persons whom the person making or directing the communication believes on reasonable grounds to be persons to whom paragraph (2) applies; and
  - (d) relates only to an investment falling within paragraph 15, [F9515A,] 17 or 19 of Schedule 1 which is issued, or to be issued, by A.
- (2) This paragraph applies to—
- (a) a creditor or member of A;
  - (b) a person who is entitled to an investment falling within paragraph 15, [F9615A,] 17 or 19 of Schedule 1 which is issued, or to be issued, by A;
  - (c) a person who is entitled, whether conditionally or unconditionally, to become a member of A but who has not yet done so;
  - (d) a person who is entitled, whether conditionally or unconditionally, to have transferred to him title to an investment falling within paragraph 15, [F9715A,] 17 or 19 of Schedule 1 which is issued by A but has not yet acquired title to the investment.
- (3) For the purposes of this article, an investment falling within paragraph 17 of Schedule 1 is treated as issued by the person (“P”) who issued the investment in respect of which the instrument confers rights if it is issued by—
- (a) an undertaking in the same group as P; or
  - (b) a person acting on behalf of, or pursuant to arrangements made with, P.

#### Textual Amendments

- F95** Words in art. 44(1)(d) inserted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(c)**
- F96** Words in art. 44(2)(b) inserted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(c)**
- F97** Words in art. 44(2)(d) inserted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(c)**

#### Group companies **U.K.**

**45.** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication made by one body corporate in a group to another body corporate in the same group.

#### Qualifying credit to bodies corporate **U.K.**

**46.** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which relates to a controlled activity falling within paragraph 10, 10A, [F9810B, 10BA or 10BB] of Schedule 1 (or within paragraph 11 so far as it relates to that activity) if the communication is—

- (a) made to or directed at bodies corporate only; or
- (b) accompanied by an indication that the qualifying credit to which it relates is only available to bodies corporate.

#### Textual Amendments

- F98** Words in art. 46 substituted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **17(4)**

**[<sup>F99</sup>Promotions of credit etc. for business purposes U.K.]**

**46A.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to a communication which relates to a controlled activity falling within paragraph 4C of Schedule 1 and which—

- (a) indicates clearly (by express words or otherwise) that a person is willing to facilitate another person (“B”) becoming the borrower under a paragraph 4C agreement for the purposes of B’s business, and
- (b) does not indicate (by express words or otherwise) that the person is willing to facilitate B becoming the borrower under such an agreement for any other purpose.

(2) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to a communication which relates to a controlled activity falling within paragraph 10BA of Schedule 1 and which—

- (a) indicates clearly (by express words or otherwise) that a person is willing to enter into a relevant credit agreement as lender for the purposes of another person’s business, and
- (b) does not indicate (by express words or otherwise) that the person is willing to enter into a relevant credit agreement as lender for any other purpose.

(3) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to a communication which relates to a controlled activity falling within paragraph 10BB of Schedule 1 and which—

- (a) indicates clearly (by express words or otherwise) that a person is willing to enter into a regulated consumer hire agreement as owner for the purposes of another person’s business, and
- (b) does not indicate (by express words or otherwise) that the person is willing to enter into a regulated consumer hire agreement as owner for any other purpose.

(4) In this article—

- (a) references to a “business” do not include a business carried on by—
  - (i) the person communicating the promotion, or
  - (ii) a person carrying on an activity of the kind specified by article 36A of the Regulated Activities Order (credit broking) in relation to the relevant credit agreement, paragraph 4C agreement or regulated consumer hire agreement to which the promotion relates;
- (b) “paragraph 4C agreement” has the meaning given in paragraph 4C of Schedule 1;
- (c) “relevant credit agreement” has the meaning given in paragraph 28 of Schedule 1.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F99** Art. 46A inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), 17(5)

**Persons in the business of disseminating information U.K.**

**47.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is made only to recipients whom the person making the communication believes on reasonable grounds to be persons to whom paragraph (2) applies.

(2) This paragraph applies to—

- (a) a person who receives the communication in the course of a business which involves the dissemination through a publication of information concerning controlled activities [<sup>F100</sup>or controlled claims management activities];

- (b) a person whilst acting in the capacity of director, officer or employee of a person falling within sub-paragraph (a) being a person whose responsibilities when acting in that capacity involve him in the business referred to in that sub-paragraph;
- (c) any person to whom the communication may otherwise lawfully be made.

#### Textual Amendments

**F100** Words in art. 47(2)(a) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **30**

#### Certified high net worth individuals **U.K.**

**48.**—(1) If the requirements of paragraphs (4) and (7) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which—

- (a) is a non-real time communication or a solicited real time communication;
- (b) is made to an individual whom the person making the communication believes on reasonable grounds to be a certified high net worth individual, and
- (c) relates only to one or more investments falling within paragraph (8).

(2) “Certified high net worth individual” means an individual who has signed, within the period of twelve months ending with the day on which the communication is made, a statement complying with Part I of Schedule 5.

(3) The validity of a statement signed for the purposes of paragraph (2) is not affected by a defect in the form or wording of the statement, provided that the defect does not alter the statement's meaning and that the words shown in bold type in Part I of Schedule 5 are so shown in the statement.

(4) The requirements of this paragraph are that either the communication is accompanied by the giving of a warning in accordance with paragraphs (5) and (6) or where, because of the nature of the communication, this is not reasonably practicable,—

- (a) a warning in accordance with paragraph (5) is given to the recipient orally at the beginning of the communication together with an indication that he will receive the warning in legible form and that, before receipt of that warning, he should consider carefully any decision to engage in investment activity to which the communication relates; and
- (b) a warning in accordance with paragraphs (5) and (6) (d) to (h) is sent to the recipient of the communication within two business days of the day on which the communication is made.

(5) The warning must be in the following terms—

“The content of this promotion has not been approved by an authorised person within the meaning of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000. Reliance on this promotion for the purpose of engaging in any investment activity may expose an individual to a significant risk of losing all of the property or other assets invested.”.

But where a warning is sent pursuant to paragraph (4)(b), for the words “ this promotion ” in both places where they occur there must be substituted wording which clearly identifies the promotion which is the subject of the warning.

(6) The warning must—

- (a) be given at the beginning of the communication;
- (b) precede any other written or pictorial matter;
- (c) be in a font size consistent with the text forming the remainder of the communication;

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) be indelible;
  - (e) be legible;
  - (f) be printed in black, bold type;
  - (g) be surrounded by a black border which does not interfere with the text of the warning; and
  - (h) not be hidden, obscured or interrupted by any other written or pictorial matter.
- (7) The requirements of this paragraph are that the communication is accompanied by an indication—
- (a) that it is exempt from the general restriction (in section 21 of the Act) on the communication of invitations or inducements to engage in investment activity on the ground that it is made to a certified high net worth individual;
  - (b) of the requirements that must be met for an individual to qualify as a certified high net worth individual; and
  - (c) that any individual who is in any doubt about the investment to which the communication relates should consult an authorised person specialising in advising on investments of the kind in question.
- (8) An investment falls within this paragraph if—
- (a) it is an investment falling within paragraph 14 of Schedule 1 being stock or shares in an unlisted company;
  - (b) it is an investment falling within paragraph 15 of Schedule 1 being an investment acknowledging the indebtedness of an unlisted company;
  - [<sup>F101</sup>(ba) it is an investment falling within paragraph 15A of Schedule 1 being an investment constituting an alternative finance investment bond issued by an unlisted company;]
  - (c) it is an investment falling within paragraph 17 or 18 of Schedule 1 conferring entitlement or rights with respect to investments falling within sub-paragraph (a) or (b);
  - (d) it comprises units in a collective investment scheme being a scheme which invests wholly or predominantly in investments falling within sub-paragraph (a) or (b);
  - (e) it is an investment falling within paragraph 21 of Schedule 1 being an option to acquire or dispose of an investment falling within sub-paragraph (a), (b) or (c);
  - (f) it is an investment falling within paragraph 22 of Schedule 1 being rights under a contract for the sale of an investment falling within sub-paragraph (a), (b) or (c);
  - (g) it is an investment falling within paragraph 23 of Schedule 1 being a contract relating to, or to fluctuations in value or price of, an investment falling within sub-paragraph (a), (b) or (c),

provided in each case that it is an investment under the terms of which the investor cannot incur a liability or obligation to pay or contribute more than he commits by way of investment.

(9) “Business day” means any day except a Saturday, a Sunday, Christmas Day, Good Friday or a day which is a bank holiday under the Banking and Financial Dealings Act 1971 <sup>M3</sup> in any part of the United Kingdom.

#### Textual Amendments

**F101** Art. 48(8)(ba) inserted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(d)**

### Marginal Citations

M3 1971 c. 80

### High net worth companies, unincorporated associations etc. **U.K.**

- 49.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which—
- (a) is made only to recipients whom the person making the communication believes on reasonable grounds to be persons to whom paragraph (2) applies; or
  - (b) may reasonably be regarded as directed only at persons to whom paragraph (2) applies.
- (2) This paragraph applies to—
- (a) any body corporate which has, or which is a member of the same group as an undertaking which has, a called-up share capital or net assets of not less than—
    - (i) if the body corporate has more than 20 members or is a subsidiary undertaking of an undertaking which has more than 20 members, £500,000;
    - (ii) otherwise, £5 million;
  - (b) any unincorporated association or partnership which has net assets of not less than £5 million;
  - (c) the trustee of a high value trust;
  - (d) any person (“A”) whilst acting in the capacity of director, officer or employee of a person (“B”) falling within any of sub-paragraphs (a) to (c) where A's responsibilities, when acting in that capacity, involve him in B's engaging in investment activity;
  - (e) any person to whom the communication may otherwise lawfully be made.
- (3) For the purposes of paragraph (1)(b)—
- (a) if all the conditions set out in paragraph (4)(a) to (c) are met, the communication is to be regarded as directed at persons to whom paragraph (2) applies;
  - (b) in any other case in which one or more of those conditions are met, that fact is to be taken into account in determining whether the communication is directed at persons to whom paragraph (2) applies (but a communication may still be regarded as so directed even if none of the conditions in paragraph (4) is met).
- (4) The conditions are that—
- (a) the communication includes an indication of the description of persons to whom it is directed and an indication of the fact that the controlled investment or controlled activity to which it relates is available only to such persons;
  - (b) the communication includes an indication that persons of any other description should not act upon it;
  - (c) there are in place proper systems and procedures to prevent recipients other than persons to whom paragraph (2) applies engaging in the investment activity to which the communication relates with the person directing the communication, a close relative of his or a member of the same group.
- (5) “Called-up share capital” has the meaning given in [<sup>F102</sup>the 2006 Act (see section 547)].
- (6) “High value trust” means a trust where the aggregate value of the cash and investments which form part of the trust's assets (before deducting the amount of its liabilities)—
- (a) is £10 million or more; or
  - (b) has been £10 million or more at anytime during the year immediately preceding the date on which the communication in question was first made or directed.

(7) “Net assets” has the meaning given by [<sup>F103</sup>section 831 of the 2006 Act].

[<sup>F104</sup>(8) Paragraph (1) does not apply to any communication in respect of a controlled claims management activity.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F102** Words in art. 49(5) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(6)(a)**

**F103** Words in art. 49(7) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(6)(b)**

**F104** Art. 49(8) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **31**

#### Sophisticated investors **U.K.**

**50.**—(1) “Certified sophisticated investor”, in relation to any description of investment, means a person—

(a) who has a current certificate in writing or other legible form signed by an authorised person to the effect that he is sufficiently knowledgeable to understand the risks associated with that description of investment; and

(b) who has signed, within the period of twelve months ending with the day on which the communication is made, a statement in the following terms:

“I make this statement so that I am able to receive promotions which are exempt from the restrictions on financial promotion in the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000. The exemption relates to certified sophisticated investors and I declare that I qualify as such in relation to investments of the following kind [list them]. I accept that the contents of promotions and other material that I receive may not have been approved by an authorised person and that their content may not therefore be subject to controls which would apply if the promotion were made or approved by an authorised person. I am aware that it is open to me to seek advice from someone who specialises in advising on this kind of investment.”.

(1A) The validity of a statement signed in accordance with paragraph (1)(b) is not affected by a defect in the wording of the statement, provided that the defect does not alter the statement's meaning.

(2) If the requirements of paragraph (3) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which—

(a) is made to a certified sophisticated investor;

(b) does not invite or induce the recipient to engage in investment activity with the person who has signed the certificate referred to in paragraph (1)(a); and

(c) relates only to a description of investment in respect of which that investor is certified.

(3) The requirements of this paragraph are that the communication is accompanied by an indication—

(a) that it is exempt from the general restriction (in section 21 of the Act) on the communication of invitations or inducements to engage in investment activity on the ground that it is made to a certified sophisticated investor;

(b) of the requirements that must be met for a person to qualify as a certified sophisticated investor;

- (c) that the content of the communication has not been approved by an authorised person and that such approval is, unless this exemption or any other exemption applies, required by section 21 of the Act;
  - (d) that reliance on the communication for the purpose of engaging in any investment activity may expose the individual to a significant risk of losing all of the property invested or of incurring additional liability;
  - (e) that any person who is in any doubt about the investment to which the communication relates should consult an authorised person specialising in advising on investments of the kind in question.
- (4) For the purposes of paragraph (1)(a), a certificate is current if it is signed and dated not more than three years before the date on which the communication is made.

### Self-certified sophisticated investors **U.K.**

**50A.**—(1) “Self-certified sophisticated investor” means an individual who has signed within the period of twelve months ending with the day on which the communication is made, a statement complying with Part II of Schedule 5.

(2) The validity of a statement signed for the purposes of paragraph (1) is not affected by a defect in the form or wording of the statement, provided that the defect does not alter the statement’s meaning and that the words shown in bold type in Part II of Schedule 5 are so shown in the statement.

(3) If the requirements of paragraphs (4) and (7) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which—

- (a) is made to an individual whom the person making the communication believes on reasonable grounds to be a self-certified sophisticated investor; and
- (b) relates only to one or more investments falling within paragraph (8).

(4) The requirements of this paragraph are that either the communication is accompanied by the giving of a warning in accordance with paragraphs (5) and (6) or where, because of the nature of the communication this is not reasonably practicable—

- (a) a warning in accordance with paragraph (5) is given to the recipient orally at the beginning of the communication together with an indication that he will receive the warning in legible form and that, before receipt of that warning, he should consider carefully any decision to engage in investment activity to which the communication relates; and
- (b) a warning in accordance with paragraphs (5) and (6) (d) to (h) is sent to the recipient of the communication within two business days of the day on which the communication is made.

(5) The warning must be in the following terms—

“The content of this promotion has not been approved by an authorised person within the meaning of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000. Reliance on this promotion for the purpose of engaging in any investment activity may expose an individual to a significant risk of losing all of the property or other assets invested.”.

But where a warning is sent pursuant to paragraph (4)(b), for the words “ this promotion ” in both places where they occur there must be substituted wording which clearly identifies the promotion which is the subject of the warning.

(6) The warning must—

- (a) be given at the beginning of the communication;
- (b) precede any other written or pictorial matter;
- (c) be in a font size consistent with the text forming the remainder of the communication;
- (d) be indelible;

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

- (e) be legible;
  - (f) be printed in black, bold type;
  - (g) be surrounded by a black border which does not interfere with the text of the warning; and
  - (h) not be hidden, obscured or interrupted by any other written or pictorial matter.
- (7) The requirements of this paragraph are that the communication is accompanied by an indication—
- (a) that it is exempt from the general restriction (in section 21 of the Act) on the communication of invitations or inducements to engage in investment activity on the ground that it is made to a self-certified sophisticated investor;
  - (b) of the requirements that must be met for an individual to qualify as a self-certified sophisticated investor;
  - (c) that any individual who is in any doubt about the investment to which the communication relates should consult an authorised person specialising in advising on investments of the kind in question.
- (8) An investment falls within this paragraph if—
- (a) it is an investment falling within paragraph 14 of Schedule 1 being stock or shares in an unlisted company;
  - (b) it is an investment falling within paragraph 15 of Schedule 1 being an investment acknowledging the indebtedness of an unlisted company;
  - [<sup>F105</sup>(ba) it is an investment falling within paragraph 15A of Schedule 1 being an investment constituting an alternative finance investment bond issued by an unlisted company;]
  - (c) it is an investment falling within paragraph 17 or 18 of Schedule 1 conferring entitlement or rights with respect to investments falling within sub-paragraph (a) or (b);
  - (d) it comprises units in a collective investment scheme being a scheme which invests wholly or predominantly in investments falling within sub-paragraph (a) or (b);
  - (e) it is an investment falling within paragraph 21 of Schedule 1 being an option to acquire or dispose of an investment falling within sub-paragraph (a), (b) or (c);
  - (f) it is an investment falling within paragraph 22 of Schedule 1 being rights under a contract for the sale of an investment falling within sub-paragraph (a), (b) or (c);
  - (g) it is an investment falling within paragraph 23 of Schedule 1 being a contract relating to, or to fluctuations in value or price of, an investment falling within sub-paragraph (a), (b) or (c),
- provided in each case that it is an investment under the terms of which the investor cannot incur a liability or obligation to pay or contribute more than he commits by way of investment.
- (9) “Business day” means any day except a Saturday, a Sunday, Christmas Day, Good Friday or a day which is a bank holiday under the Banking and Financial Dealings Act 1971 in any part of the United Kingdom.

#### Textual Amendments

**F105** Art. 50A(8)(ba) inserted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(e)**



## Associations of high net worth or sophisticated investors **U.K.**

51.—<sup>F106</sup>(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any non-real time communication or solicited real time communication which—

- (a) is made to an association, or to a member of an association, the membership of which the person making the communication believes on reasonable grounds comprises wholly or predominantly persons who are—
  - (i) certified or self-certified high net worth individuals within the meaning of article 48;
  - (ii) high net worth persons falling within article 49(2)(a) to (d);
  - (iii) certified or self-certified sophisticated investors within the meaning of article 50 or 50A; and
- (b) relates only to an investment under the terms of which a person cannot incur a liability or obligation to pay or contribute more than he commits by way of investment.

<sup>F107</sup>(2) The exemption in paragraph (1) does not apply if the communication relates to a qualifying cryptoasset.]

### Textual Amendments

**F106** Art. 51 renumbered as art. 51(1) (8.6.2023 for specified purposes, 7.10.2023 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/612\)](#), arts. 1(2), **5(a)** (with art. 11)

**F107** Art. 51(2) inserted (8.6.2023 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/612\)](#), arts. 1(2), **5(b)** (with art. 11)

## Common interest group of a company **U.K.**

52.—(1) “Common interest group”, in relation to a company, means an identified group of persons who at the time the communication is made might reasonably be regarded as having an existing and common interest with each other and that company in—

- (a) the affairs of the company; and
- (b) what is done with the proceeds arising from any investment to which the communication relates.

(2) If the requirements of paragraphs (3) and either (4) or (5) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which—

- (a) is a non-real time communication or a solicited real time communication;
- (b) is made only to persons who are members of a common interest group of a company, or may reasonably be regarded as directed only at such persons; and
- (c) relates to investments falling within paragraph 14<sup>F108</sup>, 15 or 15A] of Schedule 1 which are issued, or to be issued, by that company.

(3) The requirements of this paragraph are that the communication is accompanied by an indication—

- (a) that the directors of the company (or its promoters named in the communication) have taken all reasonable care to ensure that every statement of fact or opinion included in the communication is true and not misleading given the form and context in which it appears;
- (b) that the directors of the company (or its promoters named in the communication) have not limited their liability with respect to the communication; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) that any person who is in any doubt about the investment to which the communication relates should consult an authorised person specialising in advising on investments of the kind in question.
- (4) The requirements of this paragraph are that the communication is accompanied by an indication—
- (a) that the directors of the company (or its promoters named in the communication) have taken all reasonable care to ensure that any person belonging to the common interest group (and his professional advisers) can have access, at all reasonable times, to all the information that he or they would reasonably require, and reasonably expect to find, for the purpose of making an informed assessment of the assets and liabilities, financial position, profits and losses and prospects of the company and of the rights attaching to the investments in question; and
  - (b) describing the means by which such information can be accessed.
- (5) The requirements of this paragraph are that the communication is accompanied by an indication that any person considering subscribing for the investments in question should regard any subscription as made primarily to assist the furtherance of the company's objectives (other than any purely financial objectives) and only secondarily, if at all, as an investment.
- (6) For the purposes of paragraph (2)(b)—
- (a) if all the conditions set out in paragraph (7) are met, the communication is to be regarded as directed at persons who are members of the common interest group;
  - (b) in any other case in which one or more of those conditions are met, that fact shall be taken into account in determining whether the communication is directed at persons who are members of the common interest group (but a communication may still be regarded as directed only at such persons even if none of the conditions in paragraph (7) is met).
- (7) The conditions are that—
- (a) the communication is accompanied by an indication that it is directed at persons who are members of the common interest group and that any investment or activity to which it relates is available only to such persons;
  - (b) the communication is accompanied by an indication that it must not be acted upon by persons who are not members of the common interest group;
  - (c) there are in place proper systems and procedures to prevent recipients other than members of the common interest group engaging in the investment activity to which the communication relates with the person directing the communication, a close relative of his or a member of the same group.
- (8) Persons are not to be regarded as having an interest of the kind described in paragraph (1) if the only reason why they would be so regarded is that—
- (a) they will have such an interest if they become members or creditors of the company;
  - (b) they all carry on a particular trade or profession; or
  - (c) they are persons with whom the company has an existing business relationship, whether by being its clients, customers, contractors, suppliers or otherwise.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F108** Words in art. 52(2)(c) substituted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(a)(iv)**

### Settlers, trustees and personal representatives **U.K.**

53. The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is made between—

- (a) a person when acting as a settlor or grantor of a trust, a trustee or a personal representative; and
- (b) a trustee of the trust, a fellow trustee or a fellow personal representative (as the case may be),

if the communication is made for the purposes of the trust or estate.

### Beneficiaries of trust, will or intestacy **U.K.**

54. The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is made—

- (a) between a person when acting as a settlor or grantor of a trust, trustee or personal representative and a beneficiary under the trust, will or intestacy; or
- (b) between a beneficiary under a trust, will or intestacy and another beneficiary under the same trust, will or intestacy,

if the communication relates to the management or distribution of that trust fund or estate.

### Communications by members of professions **U.K.**

55.—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to a real time communication (whether solicited or unsolicited) which—

- (a) is made by a person (“P”) who carries on a regulated activity to which the general prohibition does not apply by virtue of section 327 of the Act; and
- (b) is made to a recipient who has, prior to the communication being made, engaged P to provide professional services,

where the controlled activity to which the communication relates is an excluded activity which would be undertaken by P for the purposes of, and incidental to, the provision by him of professional services to or at the request of the recipient.

(2) “Professional services” has the meaning given in section 327 of the Act.

(3) An “excluded activity” is an activity to which the general prohibition would apply but for the application of—

- (a) section 327 of the Act; or
- (b) article 67 of the Regulated Activities Order.

### Non-real time communication by members of professions **U.K.**

55A.—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to a non-real time communication which is—

- (a) made by a person (“P”) who carries on Part XX activities; and
- (b) limited to what is required or permitted by paragraphs (2) and (3).

(2) The communication must be in the following terms— “ This [firm/company] is not authorised under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 but we are able in certain circumstances to offer a limited range of investment [F109]and consumer credit-related][F110]and claims management-related] services to clients because we are members of [relevant designated professional body]. We can provide these investment [F109]and consumer credit-related] services if they are an incidental part of the professional services we have been engaged to provide. ”

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

(3) The communication may in addition set out the Part XX activities which P is able to offer to his clients, provided it is clear that these are the investment <sup>F111</sup>and consumer credit-related<sup>F112</sup>and claims management-related] services to which the statement in paragraph (2) relates.

(4) The validity of a communication made in accordance with paragraph (2) is not affected by a defect in the wording of it provided that the defect does not alter the communication's meaning.

(5) “Part XX activities” means the regulated activities to which the general prohibition does not apply when they are carried on by P by virtue of section 327 of the Act.

#### Textual Amendments

**F109** Words in art. 55A(2) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(6)**

**F110** Words in art. 55A(2) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **32(a)**

**F111** Words in art. 55A(3) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(6)**

**F112** Words in art. 55A(3) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **32(b)**

#### <sup>F113</sup>Insolvency practitioners **U.K.**

**55B.** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any non-real time communication or solicited real time communication by a person acting as an insolvency practitioner (within the meaning of the Regulated Activities Order) <sup>F114</sup>in the course of carrying on] an activity which would be a regulated activity but for article 72H of the Regulated Activities Order (insolvency practitioners).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F113** Art. 55B inserted (1.4.2014) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Consumer Credit\) \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) \(No. 2\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/506\)](#), arts. 1(3), **3(3)**

**F114** Words in art. 55B substituted (24.3.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/853\)](#), arts. 1(2), **4(2)**

#### Remedy following report by Parliamentary Commissioner for Administration **U.K.**

**56.** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication made or directed by a person for the purpose of enabling any injustice, stated by the Parliamentary Commissioner for Administration in a report under section 10 of the Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 <sup>M4</sup> to have occurred, to be remedied with respect to the recipient.

#### Marginal Citations

**M4** 1967 c. 13. This Act has been amended by the [Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1994 \(c. 14\)](#).

**Persons placing promotional material in particular publications** U.K.

57. The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication received by a person who receives the publication in which the communication is contained because he has himself placed an advertisement in that publication.

**Acquisition of interest in premises run by management companies** U.K.

58.—(1) “Management company” means a company established for the purpose of—

- (a) managing the common parts or fabric of premises used for residential or business purposes; or
- (b) supplying services to such premises.

(2) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any non-real time communication or solicited real time communication if it relates to an investment falling within paragraph 14 of Schedule 1 which—

- (a) is issued, or to be issued, by a management company; and
- (b) is to be acquired by any person in connection with the acquisition of an interest in the premises in question.

**Annual accounts and directors' report** U.K.

59.—(1) If the requirements in paragraphs (2) to (5) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication by a body corporate (other than an open-ended investment company) which—

- (a) consists of, or is accompanied by, the whole or any part of the annual accounts of a body corporate (other than an open-ended investment company); or
- (b) is accompanied by any report which is prepared and approved by the directors of such a body corporate under—

[<sup>F115</sup>(ai) sections 414A and 414D of the 2006 Act;]<sup>F116</sup>or]

[<sup>F117</sup>(i) sections 415 and 419 of the 2006 Act]<sup>F118</sup> ...

<sup>F119</sup>(ii) . . . . .

<sup>F120</sup>(iii) . . . . .

(2) The requirements of this paragraph are that the communication—

- (a) does not contain any invitation to persons to underwrite, subscribe for, or otherwise acquire or dispose of, a controlled investment; and
- (b) does not advise persons to engage in any of the activities within sub-paragraph (a).

(3) The requirements of this paragraph are that the communication does not contain any invitation to persons to—

- (a) effect any transaction with the body corporate (or with any named person) in the course of that body's (or person's) carrying on of any activity falling within any of paragraphs 3 to [<sup>F121</sup>11][<sup>F121</sup>11A] of Schedule 1; or
- (b) make use of any services provided by that body corporate (or by any named person) in the course of carrying on such activity.

(4) The requirements of this paragraph are that the communication does not contain any inducement relating to an investment other than one issued, or to be issued, by the body corporate (or another body corporate in the same group) which falls within—

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) paragraph 14<sup>F122</sup>, 15 or 15A] of Schedule 1; or
  - (b) paragraph 17 or 18 of that Schedule, so far as relating to any investments within subparagraph (a).
- (5) The requirements of this paragraph are that the communication does not contain any reference to—
- (a) the price at which investments issued by the body corporate have in the past been bought or sold; or
  - (b) the yield on such investments,
- unless it is also accompanied by an indication that past performance cannot be relied on as a guide to future performance.
- (6) For the purposes of paragraph (5)(b), a reference, in relation to an investment, to earnings, dividend or nominal rate of interest payable shall not be taken to be a reference to the yield on the investment.
- (7) “Annual accounts” means—
- (a) accounts produced by virtue of <sup>F123</sup>Part 15 of the 2006 Act] (or of that Part as applied by virtue of any other enactment);
  - <sup>F124</sup>(b) .....
  - (c) a summary financial statement prepared under <sup>F125</sup>section 426 of the 2006 Act];
  - <sup>F126</sup>(d) accounts produced in accordance with Chapter 3 of Part 5 of the Overseas Companies Regulations 2009 and filed with the registrar under section 441 of the 2006 Act as applied and modified by regulation 40 of those Regulations;]
  - <sup>F127</sup>(e) .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F115** Art. 59(1)(b)(ai) inserted (18.3.2015) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Miscellaneous Provisions) (No. 2) Order 2015 (S.I. 2015/352), arts. 1, **4(a)**
- F116** Word in art. 59(1)(b)(ai) inserted (31.12.2020) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019 (S.I. 2019/632), regs. 1(3), **174(2)(a)** (with regs. 162(2), 174(4)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u)(v) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F117** Art. 59(1)(b)(i) substituted (12.5.2011) by The Companies Act 2006 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/1265), arts. 1(2), **26(7)(a)**
- F118** Word in art. 59(1)(b)(i) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019 (S.I. 2019/632), regs. 1(3), **174(2)(b)** (with regs. 162(2), 174(4)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u)(v) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F119** Art. 59(1)(b)(ii) omitted (12.5.2011) by virtue of The Companies Act 2006 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/1265), arts. 1(2), **26(7)(b)**
- F120** Art. 59(1)(b)(iii) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019 (S.I. 2019/632), regs. 1(3), **174(2)(c)** (with regs. 162(2), 174(4)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u)(v) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F121** Word in art. 59(3)(a) substituted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Claims Management Activity) Order 2018 (S.I. 2018/1253), arts. 1(2)(3), **33**
- F122** Words in art. 59(4)(a) substituted (24.2.2010) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/86), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(a)(v)**

- F123** Words in art. 59(7)(a) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(8)(a)**
- F124** Art. 59(7)(b) omitted (12.5.2011) by virtue of [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(8)(b)**
- F125** Words in art. 59(7)(c) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(8)(c)**
- F126** Art. 59(7)(d) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(8)(d)**
- F127** Art. 59(7)(e) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **174(3)** (with regs. 162(2), 174(4)) (as amended by [S.I. 2020/1301](#), regs. 1, 3, [Sch. para. 33\(u\)\(v\)](#) and with savings in [S.I. 2019/680](#), reg. 11 (as amended by [S.I. 2019/1212](#), regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, [Sch. 5 para. 1\(1\)](#))

### Participation in employee share schemes **U.K.**

**60.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication by a person (“C”), a member of the same group as C or a relevant trustee where the communication is for the purposes of an employee share scheme and relates to any of the following investments issued, or to be issued, by C—

- (a) investments falling within paragraph 14<sup>[F128]</sup>, 15 or 15A] of Schedule 1;
- (b) investments falling within paragraph 17 or 18 so far as relating to any investments within sub-paragraph (a); or
- (c) investments falling within paragraph 21 or 27 so far as relating to any investments within sub-paragraph (a) or (b).

(2) “Employee share scheme”, in relation to any investments issued by C, means arrangements made or to be made by C or by a person in the same group as C to enable or facilitate—

- (a) transactions in the investments specified in paragraphs (1)(a) or (b) between or for the benefit of—
  - (i) the bona fide employees or former employees of C or of another member of the same group as C;
  - (ii) the wives, husbands, widows, widowers<sup>[F129]</sup>, civil partners, surviving civil partners] or children or step-children under the age of eighteen of such employees or former employees; or
- (b) the holding of those investments by, or for the benefit of, such persons.

(3) “Relevant trustee” means a person who, in pursuance of an actual or proposed employee share scheme, holds as trustee or will hold as trustee investments issued by C.

#### Textual Amendments

- F128** Words in art. 60(1)(a) substituted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(a)(vi)**
- F129** Words in art. 60(2)(a)(ii) inserted (21.12.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/3392\)](#), arts. 1, **2(4)**

### Sale of goods and supply of services **U.K.**

**61.**—(1) In this article—

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

“supplier” means a person whose main business is to sell goods or supply services and not to carry on controlled activities [<sup>F130</sup>or controlled claims management activities] falling within any of paragraphs 3 to 7 [<sup>F131</sup>, 10BA [<sup>F132</sup>and 10BB]] [<sup>F132</sup>, 10BB and 11A] of Schedule 1 and, where the supplier is a member of a group, also means any other member of that group;

“customer” means a person, other than an individual, to whom a supplier sells goods or supplies services, or agrees to do so, and, where the customer is a member of a group, also means any other member of that group;

“a related sale or supply” means a sale of goods or supply of services to the customer otherwise than by the supplier, but for or in connection with the same purpose as the sale or supply mentioned above.

(2) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any non-real time communication or any solicited real time communication made by a supplier to a customer of his for the purposes of, or in connection with, the sale of goods or supply of services or a related sale or supply.

(3) But the exemption in paragraph (2) does not apply if the communication relates to—

- (a) a qualifying contract of insurance or units in a collective investment scheme; <sup>F133</sup>...
- (b) investments falling within paragraph 27 of Schedule 1 so far as relating to investments within paragraph (a).

<sup>F134</sup>(c) a relevant credit agreement (within the meaning of paragraph 28 of Schedule 1); [<sup>F135</sup>or]

(d) a consumer hire agreement (within the meaning of paragraph 28 of Schedule 1). [<sup>F136</sup>; or

(e) a qualifying cryptoasset.]

<sup>F137</sup>(4) The exemption in paragraph (2) also does not apply if the communication is made by a person carrying on, or in relation to, an activity of a kind specified in paragraph 4B of Schedule 1 (credit broking).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F130** Words in art. 61(1) inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **34(a)**
- F131** Words in art. 61(1) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(7)(a)**
- F132** Words in art. 61(1) substituted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **34(b)**
- F133** Word in art. 61(3)(a) omitted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(7)(b)(i)**
- F134** Art. 61(3)(c)(d) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(7)(b)(ii)**
- F135** Word in art. 61(3) omitted (8.6.2023 for specified purposes) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/612\)](#), arts. 1(2), **6(a)** (with art. 11)
- F136** Art. 61(3)(e) and word inserted (8.6.2023 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/612\)](#), arts. 1(2), **6(b)** (with art. 11)



**F137** Art. 61(4) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(7)(c)**

### Sale of body corporate **U.K.**

**62.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication by, or on behalf of, a body corporate, a partnership, a single individual or a group of connected individuals which relates to a transaction falling within paragraph (2).

(2) A transaction falls within this paragraph if—

- (a) it is one to acquire or dispose of shares in a body corporate other than an open-ended investment company, or is entered into for the purposes of such an acquisition or disposal; and
- (b) either—
  - (i) the conditions set out in paragraph (3) are met; or
  - (ii) those conditions are not met, but the object of the transaction may nevertheless reasonably be regarded as being the acquisition of day to day control of the affairs of the body corporate.

(3) The conditions mentioned in paragraph (2)(b) are that—

- (a) the shares consist of or include 50 per cent or more of the voting shares in the body corporate; or
- (b) the shares, together with any already held by the person acquiring them, consist of or include at least that percentage of such shares; and
- (c) in either case, the acquisition or disposal is, or is to be, between parties each of whom is a body corporate, a partnership, a single individual or a group of connected individuals.

(4) “A group of connected individuals” means—

- (a) in relation to a party disposing of shares in a body corporate, a single group of persons each of whom is—
  - (i) a director or manager of the body corporate;
  - (ii) a close relative of any such director or manager; or
  - (iii) a person acting as trustee for, or nominee of, any person falling within paragraph (i) or (ii); and
- (b) in relation to a party acquiring shares in a body corporate, a single group of persons each of whom is—
  - (i) a person who is or is to be a director or manager of the body corporate;
  - (ii) a close relative of any such person; or
  - (iii) a person acting as trustee for or nominee of any person falling within paragraph (i) or (ii).

(5) “Voting shares” in relation to a body corporate, means shares carrying voting rights attributable to share capital which are exercisable in all circumstances at any general meeting of that body corporate.

### Takeovers of relevant unlisted companies: interpretation **U.K.**

**63.**—(1) In this article and in articles 64, 65 and 66, a “relevant unlisted company”, in relation to a takeover offer, means a company which is an unlisted company at the time that the offer is made

and which has been an unlisted company throughout the period of ten years immediately preceding the date of the offer.

(2) In this article and in articles 64, 65 and 66, references to a takeover offer for a relevant unlisted company are references to an offer which meets the requirements of Part I of Schedule 4 and which is an offer—

- (a) for all the shares in, or all the shares comprised in the equity or non-equity share capital of, a relevant unlisted company (other than any shares already held by or on behalf of the person making the offer); or
- (b) for all the debentures of such a company (other than debentures already held by or on behalf of the person making the offer).

(3) Shares in or debentures of an unlisted company are to be regarded as being held by or on behalf of the person making the offer if the person who holds them, or on whose behalf they are held, has agreed that an offer should not be made in respect of them.

#### **Takeovers of relevant unlisted companies** U.K.

**64.**—(1) If the requirements of paragraphs (2) and (3) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is communicated in connection with a takeover offer for a relevant unlisted company.

(2) The requirements of this paragraph are that the communication is accompanied by the material listed in Part II of Schedule 4.

(3) The requirements of this paragraph are that the material listed in Part III of Schedule 4 is available at a place in the United Kingdom at all times during normal office hours for inspection free of charge.

#### **Takeovers of relevant unlisted companies: warrants etc.** U.K.

**65.** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which—

- (a) is communicated at the same time as, or after, a takeover offer for a relevant unlisted company is made; and
- (b) relates to investments falling within paragraph 17 or 18 of Schedule 1 so far as relating to the shares in or debentures of the unlisted company which are the subject of the offer.

#### **Takeovers of relevant unlisted companies: application forms** U.K.

**66.** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication made in connection with a takeover offer for a relevant unlisted company which is a form of application for—

- (a) shares in or debentures of the unlisted company; or
- (b) investments falling within paragraphs 17 or 18 of Schedule 1 so far as relating to the shares in or debentures of the company which are the subject of the offer.

#### **Promotions required or permitted by market rules** U.K.

**67.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which—

- (a) is a non-real time communication or a solicited real time communication;
- (b) relates to an investment which falls within any of paragraphs 14 to 18 of Schedule 1 and which is permitted to be traded or dealt in on a relevant market; and
- (c) is required or permitted to be communicated by—
  - (i) the rules of the relevant market;

- (ii) a body which regulates the market; or
  - (iii) a body which regulates offers or issues of investments to be traded on such a market.
- (2) “Relevant market” means a market which—
- [<sup>F138</sup>(za) is a relevant UK market;]
  - (a) meets the criteria specified in Part I of Schedule 3; or
  - (b) is specified in, or established under the rules of an exchange specified in, Part <sup>F139</sup>... III of that Schedule.

**Textual Amendments**

**F138** Art. 67(2)(za) inserted (18.10.2021) by [The Markets in Financial Instruments, Benchmarks and Financial Promotions \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2021 \(S.I. 2021/1074\)](#), regs. 1(2), **2(5)**

**F139** Words in art. 67(2)(b) omitted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(7)**

**Promotions in connection with admission to certain [<sup>F140</sup>UK and] EEA markets U.K.**

- 68.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication—
- (a) which is a non-real time communication or a solicited real time communication;
  - (b) which a relevant [<sup>F141</sup>UK market or relevant] EEA market requires to be communicated before an investment can be admitted to trading on that market;
  - (c) which, if it were included in a prospectus issued in accordance with prospectus rules made under Part VI of the Act, would be required to be communicated by those rules; and
  - (d) which is not accompanied by any information other than information which is required or permitted to be published by the rules of that market.
- (2) In this article “relevant EEA market” means any market on which investments can be traded or dealt in and which—
- (a) meets the criteria specified in Part I of Schedule 3; <sup>F142</sup>...
  - <sup>F142</sup>(b) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F140** Words in art. 68 heading inserted (18.10.2021) by [The Markets in Financial Instruments, Benchmarks and Financial Promotions \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2021 \(S.I. 2021/1074\)](#), regs. 1(2), **2(6)(a)**

**F141** Words in art. 68(1)(b) inserted (18.10.2021) by [The Markets in Financial Instruments, Benchmarks and Financial Promotions \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2021 \(S.I. 2021/1074\)](#), regs. 1(2), **2(6)(b)**

**F142** Art. 68(2)(b) and preceding word omitted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(8)**

**Promotions of securities already admitted to certain markets U.K.**

- 69.**—(1) In this article—
- “relevant investment” means any investment falling within—

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) paragraph 14<sup>F143</sup>, 15 or 15A] of Schedule 1; or
- (b) paragraph 17 or 18 of that Schedule so far as relating to any investment mentioned in sub-paragraph (a);
- “relevant market” means any market on which investments can be traded and which—
- (za) <sup>F144</sup>is a relevant UK market;]
- (a) meets the criteria specified in Part I of Schedule 3; or
- (b) is specified in, or established under, the rules of an exchange specified in, Part <sup>F145</sup>... III of that Schedule.
- (2) If the requirements of paragraph (3) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which—
- (a) is a non-real time communication or a solicited real time communication;
- (b) is communicated by a body corporate (“A”), other than an open-ended investment company; and
- (c) relates only to relevant investments issued, or to be issued, by A or by another body corporate in the same group,
- if relevant investments issued by A or by any such body corporate are permitted to be traded on a relevant market.
- (3) The requirements of this paragraph are that the communication—
- (a) is not, and is not accompanied by, an invitation to engage in investment activity;
- (b) is not, and is not accompanied by, an inducement relating to an investment other than one issued, or to be issued, by A (or another body corporate in the same group);
- (c) is not, and is not accompanied by, an inducement relating to a relevant investment which refers to—
- (i) the price at which relevant investments have been bought or sold in the past, or
- (ii) the yield on such investments,
- unless the inducement also contains an indication that past performance cannot be relied on as a guide to future performance.
- (4) For the purposes of this article, an investment falling within paragraph 17 or 18 of Schedule 1 is treated as issued by the person (“P”) who issued the investment in respect of which the investment confers rights if it is issued by—
- (a) an undertaking in the same group as P; or
- (b) a person acting on behalf of, or pursuant to, arrangements made with P.
- (5) For the purposes of paragraph (3)(a), “engaging in investment activity” has the meaning given in section 21(8) of the Act; and for the purposes of paragraph (3)(c)(ii), a reference, in relation to an investment, to earnings, dividend or nominal rate of interest payable shall not be taken to be a reference to the yield on the investment.

#### Textual Amendments

**F143** Words in art. 69(1) substituted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(a)(vii)**

**F144** Words in art. 69(1) inserted (18.10.2021) by [The Markets in Financial Instruments, Benchmarks and Financial Promotions \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2021 \(S.I. 2021/1074\)](#), regs. 1(2), **2(7)**

**F145** Words in art. 69(1) omitted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. para. 9\(9\)](#)

## Promotions included in listing particulars etc. **U.K.**

**70.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any non-real time communication which is included in—

- (a) listing particulars;
- (b) supplementary listing particulars;
- <sup>F146</sup>(c) a prospectus or supplementary prospectus approved—
  - (i) by the <sup>F147</sup>[FCA] in accordance with Part 6 of the Act; <sup>F148</sup> ...
  - <sup>F148</sup>(ii) .....  
or part of such a prospectus or supplementary prospectus; or]
  - (d) any other document required or permitted to be published by listing rules or prospectus rules under Part VI of the Act (except an advertisement within the meaning of <sup>F149</sup>[the prospectus regulation]).

<sup>F150</sup>(1A) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any non-real time communication—

- (a) comprising the final terms of an offer or the final offer price or amount of securities which will be offered to the public; and
- (b) complying with <sup>F151</sup>[Articles 8(1), 8(4), 8(5), 8(10), <sup>F152</sup>... 17 and 21(2) of the prospectus regulation.]]

(2) In this article “listing particulars”, “listing rules”, “<sup>F153</sup>[the prospectus regulation]” and “prospectus rules” have the meaning given by Part VI of the Act.

### Textual Amendments

- F146** Art. 70(1)(c) substituted (1.10.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment No. 2\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2615\)](#), arts. 1, **2(2)**
- F147** Word in art. 70(1)(c)(i) substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 108(c)**
- F148** Art. 70(1)(c)(ii) and word omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Prospectus \(Amendment etc.\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/1234\)](#), regs. 1(4), **26(a)** (with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1234, reg. 29(2))); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F149** Words in art. 70(1)(d) substituted (21.7.2019) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Prospectus\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/1043\)](#), regs. 1(1), **38(1)(b)** (with reg. 40)
- F150** Art. 70(1A) inserted (1.10.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment No. 2\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2615\)](#), arts. 1, **2(3)**
- F151** Words in art. 70(1A)(b) substituted (21.7.2019) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Prospectus\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/1043\)](#), regs. 1(1), **38(1)(c)** (with reg. 40)
- F152** Word in art. 70(1A)(b) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Prospectus \(Amendment etc.\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/1234\)](#), regs. 1(4), **26(b)** (with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1234, reg. 29(2))); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F153** Words in art. 70(2) substituted (21.7.2019) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Prospectus\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/1043\)](#), regs. 1(1), **38(1)(d)** (with reg. 40)

Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

**Material relating to prospectus for public offer of unlisted securities U.K.**

71.—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any non-real time communication relating to a prospectus or supplementary prospectus where the only reason for considering it to be an invitation or inducement is that it does one or more of the following—

- (a) it states the name and address of the person by whom the transferable securities to which the prospectus or supplementary prospectus relates are to be offered;
- (b) it gives other details for contacting that person;
- (c) it states the nature and the nominal value of the transferable securities to which the prospectus or supplementary prospectus relates, the number offered and the price at which they are offered;
- (d) it states that a prospectus or supplementary prospectus is or will be available (and, if it is not yet available, when it is expected to be);
- (e) it gives instructions for obtaining a copy of the prospectus or supplementary prospectus.

(2) In this article—

- (a) “transferable securities” has the same meaning as in section 102A(3) of the Act;
- (b) references to a prospectus or supplementary prospectus are references to a prospectus or supplementary prospectus which is published in accordance with prospectus rules made under Part VI of the Act.

**Pension products offered by employers U.K.**

72.—(1) If the requirements of paragraph (2) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is made by an employer to an employee in relation to a group personal pension scheme or a stakeholder pension scheme.

(2) The requirements of this paragraph are that—

- (a) the employer will make a contribution to the group personal pension scheme or stakeholder pension scheme to which the communication relates in the event of the employee becoming a member of the scheme and the communication contains a statement informing the employee of this;
- <sup>F154</sup>(b) the employer has not received, and will not receive, any direct financial benefit as a result of making the communication;
- (c) the employer notifies the employee in writing prior to the employee becoming a member of the scheme of the amount of the contribution that the employer will make to the scheme in respect of that employee <sup>F155</sup>or the basis on which the contribution will be calculated]; and
- (d) in the case of a non-real time communication, the communication contains, or is accompanied by, a statement informing the employee of his right to seek advice from an authorised person or an appointed representative.

<sup>F156</sup>(3) .....

(4) In this article—

“group personal pension scheme” means arrangements administered on a group basis under a personal pension scheme and which are available to employees of the same employer or of employers within a group;

<sup>M5M6</sup>“personal pension scheme” means a personal pension scheme as defined in section 1 of the Pension Schemes Act 1993 and which has been approved by the Commissioners of Inland Revenue under Chapter XIV of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 ;

<sup>M7</sup>“stakeholder pension scheme” has the meaning given by section 1 of the Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 .

#### Textual Amendments

- F154** Art. 72(2)(b) substituted (13.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/905\)](#), arts. 1, **4(a)(i)**
- F155** Words in art. 72(2)(c) inserted (13.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/905\)](#), arts. 1, **4(a)(ii)**
- F156** Art. 72(3) omitted (13.4.2010) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/905\)](#), arts. 1, **4(b)**

#### Marginal Citations

- M5** 1993 c. 48 as amended by section 239 of the [Pensions Act 2004 \(c. 35\)](#).
- M6** 1998 c. 1.
- M7** 1999 c. 30.

### [<sup>F157</sup> Pension product offers communicated to employees by third parties **U.K.**

**72A.**—(1) If the requirements of paragraph (2) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is made to an employee by or on behalf of a person (“A”) in relation to a group personal pension scheme or a stakeholder pension scheme.

(2) The requirements of this paragraph are that—

- (a) the employer and A have entered into a written contract specifying the terms on which the communication may be made;
- (b) in the case of a communication made by a person (“B”) on behalf of A, A and B have also entered into a written contract specifying the terms on which the communication may be made;
- (c) the employer has not received, and will not receive, any direct financial benefit as a result of the communication being made;
- (d) the employer will make a contribution to the scheme in the event of the employee becoming a member of the scheme and the communication contains a statement informing the employee of this;
- (e) in the case of a non-real time communication, the communication contains, or is accompanied by, a statement informing the employee of their right to seek advice from an authorised person or an appointed representative; and
- (f) the employer or A notifies the employee in writing prior to the employee becoming a member of the scheme of—
  - (i) the amount of the contribution that the employer will make to the scheme in respect of that employee, or the basis on which the contribution will be calculated; and
  - (ii) any remuneration A or B has received, or will receive, as a consequence of the employee becoming a member of the scheme, or the basis on which any such remuneration will be calculated.

(3) In this article “group personal pension scheme” and “stakeholder pension scheme” have the meaning given by article 72(4).

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F157** Arts. 72A-72E inserted (13.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/905\)](#), arts. 1, 5

### Insurance product offers communicated to employees by employers **U.K.**

**72B.**—(1) If the requirements of paragraph (2) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is made by an employer to an employee in relation to work-related insurance.

(2) The requirements of this paragraph are that—

- (a) where the provider of the insurance is not the employer, the employer has not received, and will not receive, any direct financial benefit as a result of making the communication; and
- (b) in the case of a non-real time communication, the communication contains, or is accompanied by, a statement informing the employee of their right to seek advice from an authorised person or an appointed representative.

(3) In this article “work-related insurance” includes—

- (a) life assurance;
- (b) long term disability insurance (also known as permanent health insurance); and
- (c) accidental death, injury, critical illness, medical, dental, income protection or travel insurance.

#### Textual Amendments

**F157** Arts. 72A-72E inserted (13.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/905\)](#), arts. 1, 5

### Insurance product offers communicated to employees by third parties **U.K.**

**72C.**—(1) If the requirements of paragraph (2) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is made to an employee by or on behalf of a person (“A”) in relation to work-related insurance.

(2) The requirements of this paragraph are that—

- (a) the employer and A have entered into a written contract specifying the terms on which the communication may be made;
- (b) in the case of a communication made by a person (“B”) on behalf of A, A and B have also entered into a written contract specifying the terms on which the communication may be made;
- (c) the employer has not received, and will not receive, any direct financial benefit as a result of the communication being made;
- (d) in the case of a non-real time communication, the communication contains, or is accompanied by, a statement informing the employee of their right to seek advice from an authorised person or an appointed representative; and
- (e) the employer or A notifies the employee in writing prior to the employee entering into a contract for the work-related insurance of any remuneration A or B has received, or will receive, as a consequence of the employee entering into the contract, or the basis on which any such remuneration will be calculated.



(3) In this article “work-related insurance” has the meaning given by article 72B(3).

#### Textual Amendments

**F157** Arts. 72A-72E inserted (13.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/905\)](#), arts. 1, 5

### Staff mortgage offers communicated to employees by employers **U.K.**

**72D.**—(1) If the requirements of paragraph (2) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is made by an employer to an employee in relation to a staff mortgage.

(2) The requirements of this paragraph are that—

- (a) where the provider of the staff mortgage is an undertaking in the same group as the employer, the employer has not received, and will not receive, any direct financial benefit as a result of making the communication; and
- (b) in the case of a non-real time communication, the communication contains or is accompanied by a statement informing the employee of their right to seek advice from an authorised person or an appointed representative.

(3) In this article, “staff mortgage” means a regulated mortgage contract between the employer, or an undertaking in the same group as the employer, as lender and the employee (alone or with another person) as borrower to defray money applied for any of the following purposes—

- (a) acquiring any residential land which was intended, at the time of the acquisition, for occupation by the employee as their home;
- (b) carrying out repairs or improvements to any residential land which was intended, at the time of taking out the loan, for occupation by the employee as their home; or
- (c) payments in respect of a loan (whether of interest or capital).

(4) In this article, “borrower”, “lender” and “regulated mortgage contract” have the meaning given by article 61(3)(a) (regulated mortgage contracts) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001.

#### Textual Amendments

**F157** Arts. 72A-72E inserted (13.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/905\)](#), arts. 1, 5

### Staff mortgage offers communicated to employees by third parties **U.K.**

**72E.**—(1) If the requirements of paragraph (2) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is made to an employee by or on behalf of a person (“A”) in relation to a staff mortgage.

(2) The requirements of this paragraph are that—

- (a) the employer and A have entered into a written contract specifying the terms on which the communication may be made;
- (b) in the case of a communication made by a person (“B”) on behalf of A, A and B have also entered into a written contract specifying the terms on which the communication may be made;

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) where the provider of the staff mortgage is an undertaking in the same group as the employer, the employer has not received, and will not receive, any direct financial benefit as a result of the communication being made;
  - (d) in the case of a non-real time communication, the communication contains, or is accompanied by, a statement informing the employee of their right to seek advice from an authorised person or an appointed representative; and
  - (e) the employer or A notifies the employee in writing prior to the employee entering into the staff mortgage of any remuneration A or B has received, or will receive, as a consequence of the employee entering into the staff mortgage, or the basis on which any such remuneration will be calculated.
- (3) In this article “staff mortgage” has the same meaning as in article 72D(3).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F157** Arts. 72A-72E inserted (13.4.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/905\)](#), arts. 1, **5**

#### [<sup>F158</sup>Credit agreements offered to employees by employers **U.K.**

**72F.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is made to an employee by or on behalf of a person in relation to an exempt staff loan.

(2) In this article, “an exempt staff loan” means a credit agreement within the meaning of article 60B (regulated credit agreements) of the Regulated Activities Order which is—

- [<sup>F159</sup>(a) offered by a lender to a borrower as an incident of employment with the lender, or with an undertaking in the same group as the lender; and]
- (b) an exempt agreement for the purposes of Chapter 14A (regulated credit agreements) of the Regulated Activities Order by virtue of a provision of article 60G (exempt agreements: exemptions relating to the total charge for credit) of that Order other than paragraph (2) of that article.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F158** Art. 72F inserted (26.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Consumer Credit\) \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/208\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **4**

**F159** Art. 72F(2)(a) substituted (24.3.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/853\)](#), arts. 1(2), **4(3)**

#### Advice centres **U.K.**

**73.**—(1) If the requirements of paragraph (2) are met, the financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which is made by a person in the course of carrying out his duties as an adviser for, or employee of, an advice centre.

- (2) The requirements of this paragraph are that the communication relates to—
  - (a) qualifying credit;
  - (b) rights under, or rights to or interests in rights under, qualifying contracts of insurance; <sup>F160</sup>...
  - (c) a child trust fund. [<sup>F161</sup>;

- (d) a regulated home reversion plan; <sup>F162</sup>...
  - (e) a regulated home purchase plan]; [<sup>F163</sup>or]
  - (f) a regulated sale and rent back agreement<sup>F164</sup>; or
  - (g) a controlled claims management activity.]
- (3) In this article—
- “adequate professional indemnity insurance”, in relation to an advice centre, means insurance providing cover that is adequate having regard to—
- (a) the claims record of the centre;
  - (b) the financial resources of the centre; and
  - (c) the right of clients of the centre to be compensated for loss arising from the negligent provision of financial advice;
- “advice centre” means a body which—
- (a) gives advice which is free and in respect of which the centre does not receive any fee, commission or other reward;
  - (b) provides debt advice as its principal financial services activity; and
  - (c) in the case of a body which is not part of a local authority, holds adequate professional indemnity insurance or a guarantee providing comparable cover;
- <sup>M8</sup>“child trust fund” has the meaning given by section 1(2) of the Child Trust Funds Act 2004 ;
- <sup>M9</sup>“local authority” has the meaning given in article 2 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Exemption) Order 2001 .

#### Textual Amendments

- F160** Word in art. 73(2)(b) deleted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **35(4)(a)**
- F161** Art. 73(2)(d)(e) and semi-colon inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **35(4)(b)**
- F162** Word in art. 73(2)(d) deleted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **30(3)(a)**
- F163** Word in art. 73(2)(e) omitted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **35(a)**
- F164** Art. 73(2)(g) and preceding word inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **35(b)**

#### Marginal Citations

- M8** 2004 c. 6.
- M9** S.I. 2001/1201.

#### <sup>F165</sup>Certain promotions of qualifying cryptoassets **U.K.**

**73ZA.**—(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which relates only to one or more qualifying cryptoassets and which is communicated—

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) by a registered person; or
  - (b) on behalf of a registered person provided that—
    - (i) the communication is a non-real time communication; and
    - (ii) the registered person prepared the content of the communication.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply where a registered person makes or directs the communication, or causes it to be made or directed, in breach of—
- (a) a requirement imposed by the FCA under section 55L (imposition of requirements by FCA) of the Act; or
  - (b) a direction given under section 137S (financial promotion rules: directions given by FCA) of the Act, as those provisions have been applied and modified by the Schedule to the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) (Amendment) Order 2023.
- (3) In this article, a “registered person” means a person who is—
- (a) a cryptoasset exchange provider or a custodian wallet provider as defined in regulation 14A (cryptoasset exchange providers and custodian wallet providers) of the Money Laundering, Terrorist Financing and Transfer of Funds (Information on the Payer) Regulations 2017;
  - (b) included on the register maintained by the FCA pursuant to regulation 54(1A) (duty to maintain registers of certain relevant persons) of those Regulations; and
  - (c) not an authorised person.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F165** Art. 73ZA inserted (8.6.2023 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/612\)](#), arts. 1(2), 7 (with art. 11)

## [<sup>F166</sup>PART 6A **E+W+S**

### EXEMPT COMMUNICATIONS: CONTROLLED CLAIMS MANAGEMENT ACTIVITIES

#### Textual Amendments

**F166** Pt. 6A inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), 36

#### Application of exemptions in this Part **E+W+S**

**73A.** The exemptions in this Part apply to any communication which relates to a controlled claims management activity of a kind specified in paragraph 11A of Schedule 1.

#### Communications made by legal professionals **E+W+S**

(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which relates to a controlled claims management activity when that communication is made in England and Wales by—

- (a) a legal practitioner;
  - (b) a firm, organisation or body corporate that carries on the controlled claims management activity through a legal practitioner; or
  - (c) an individual who carries on the controlled claims management activity at the direction of, and under the supervision of, a legal practitioner who is—
    - (i) that individual’s employer or fellow employee; or
    - (ii) a director of a company, or a member of a limited liability partnership, that provides the service and is that individual’s employer.
- (2) In paragraph (1) “legal practitioner” means—
- (a) a solicitor or barrister of any part of England and Wales or Northern Ireland;
  - (b) a Fellow of the Chartered Institute of Legal Executives;
  - (c) a European lawyer, as defined in the European Communities (Services of Lawyers) Order 1978 or the European Communities (Lawyer’s Practice) Regulations 2000;
  - (d) a registered foreign lawyer, as defined in section 89(9) of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990;
  - (e) any other member of a legal profession, of a jurisdiction other than England and Wales, that is recognised by the Law Society of England and Wales or the General Council of the Bar as a regulated legal profession.
- (3) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to a communication which relates to a controlled claims management activity when that communication is made in Scotland by—
- (a) a legal practitioner;
  - (b) a firm, organisation or body corporate that carries on the controlled claims management activity through or under the supervision of a legal practitioner where that firm, organisation or body corporate is—
    - (i) a firm of solicitors;
    - (ii) an incorporated practice; or
    - (iii) a licensed legal services provider and the activity is a legal service as defined within section 3 of the Legal Services (Scotland) Act 2010.
- (4) In paragraph (3) “legal practitioner” means—
- (a) a person who is qualified to practise as a solicitor under section 4 of the Solicitors (Scotland) Act 1980;
  - (b) an advocate who is a member of the Faculty of Advocates;
  - (c) a European lawyer as defined in the European Communities (Services of Lawyers) Order 1978 or the European Communities (Lawyer’s Practice) (Scotland) Regulations 2000; or
  - (d) a registered foreign lawyer within the meaning of section 65 of the Solicitors (Scotland) Act 1980.
- (5) A communication mentioned in paragraph (1) or (3) is only excluded from the financial promotion restriction if the legal practitioner concerned carries on the controlled claims management activity in the ordinary course of legal practice pursuant to the professional rules to which that legal practitioner is subject.

**Communications made by a charity or not-for-profit agency** **E+W+S**

- (1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which relates to a controlled claims management activity when that communication is made by a charity or not-for-profit agency.

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) In this article “charity” means—
- (a) a charity as defined by section 1(1) of the Charities Act 2011 or the Charities and Trustee Investment (Scotland) Act 2005; or
  - (b) a body registered in the Scottish Charity Register.
- (3) In this article “not-for-profit agency” means a body that by or under its constitution—
- (a) is required to apply the whole of its net income, and any expendable capital, after payment of outgoings for charitable or public purposes; and
  - (b) is prohibited from distributing, directly or indirectly, any part of its net income by way of profits or its assets among any of its members.
- (4) But a body is not prevented from being a not-for-profit agency for the purposes of paragraph (3) if its constitution permits—
- (a) the payment, out of the body’s funds, of reasonable and proper remuneration for goods or services supplied to the body by a member; or
  - (b) in the case of a not-for-profit body that is a charity, the payment to a member to which the member is eligible because that member is a beneficiary of the charity; or
  - (c) the purchase, out of the body’s funds, of indemnity insurance for trustees of the body.

#### **Communications made by a person appointed by a statutory or other public body** E+W+S

**73D.** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which relates to a controlled claims management activity when that communication is made by—

- (a) any person established or appointed by virtue of an enactment;
- (b) an Independent Complaints Reviewer; or
- (c) an Independent Case Examiner

when the communication is made in the course of carrying out that individual’s duties.

#### **Communications made by the Motor Insurers’ Bureau** E+W+S

**73E.** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which relates to a controlled claims management activity when that communication is made by the Motor Insurers’ Bureau in the course of carrying its functions (being the company limited by guarantee mentioned in section 95(2) (notification of refusal of insurance on grounds of health) of the Road Traffic Act 1988).

#### **Communications made by a medical defence union** E+W+S

**73F.** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which relates to a controlled claims management activity when that communication is made by—

- (a) the Medical Protection Society Limited for its members;
- (b) the Medical Defence Union Limited for its members; or
- (c) the Medical and Dental Defence Union of Scotland Limited for its members.

#### **Communications made by an independent trade union** E+W+S

(1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which relates to a controlled claims management activity when that communication is made by an independent trade union for —

- (a) a member (including a retired member or a student member) of an independent trade union;

- (b) a member of the family of a member referred to in sub-paragraph (a); or
  - (c) a former member of the trade union to whom the trade union may, under its rules, provide claims management services, or a member of the family of such a former member.
- (2) In paragraph (1) “independent trade union” has the same meaning as in the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992.
- (3) For the purposes of paragraph (1)—
- (a) subject to sub-paragraph (b), whether a person is or has been a member (including a retired member or a student member) of a trade union is to be decided in accordance with the rules of that trade union;
  - (b) “member” of a trade union does not include a person who, under those rules, is a member only for the purpose of pursuing a claim or claims; and
  - (c) whether a person is a member of the family of a member of a trade union is to be decided in accordance with the rules of that trade union.
- (4) An exemption of a trade union under this article is subject to compliance by the trade union with the condition that the trade union, in making a communication which relates to a controlled claims management activity, must act in accordance with the code of practice for the provision of regulated claims management activities by trade unions issued by the Treasury.

#### **Communications made by a students’ union** E+W+S

- (1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which relates to a controlled claims management activity when that communication is made by a students’ union for a member of that students’ union or a member of a constituent or affiliated association or body.
- (2) In this article “students’ union” has the meaning given by section 20 (meaning of “students’ union”) of the Education Act 1994.

#### **Communications made by an insurance intermediary** E+W+S

**73I.** The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which relates to a controlled claims management activity when that communication is made by a person who has permission to carry out a regulated activity of the kind specified in article 21, 25, 39A, 53 or 64 of the Regulated Activities Order in relation to a contract of insurance.

#### **Communications made by certain providers of referrals** E+W+S

- (1) The financial promotion restriction does not apply to any communication which relates to the controlled claims management activity falling within paragraph 11A(2) of Schedule 1 of referring the details of a potential claim or potential claimant to another person if –
- (a) the person who refers those details (“the introducer”) carries on no other regulated claims management service;
  - (b) the activity is incidental to the introducer’s main business;
  - (c) the details are only referred to authorised persons, legal practitioners, or a firm, organisation or body corporate that provides the service through legal practitioners;
  - (d) of the claims that the introducer refers to such persons, that introducer is paid, in money or money’s worth, for no more than 25 claims per calendar quarter; and
  - (e) the introducer, in obtaining and referring those details has complied with the provisions of the Data Protection Act 2018, the Privacy and Electronic Communications (EC Directive) Regulations 2003, the General Data Protection Regulation (EU) of the European

*Status: Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)*

Parliament and of the Council 2016/679 and the Consumer Protection from Unfair Trading Regulations 2008.

(2) Paragraph 1(e) does not apply in the case of a referral to a legal practitioner or firm, organisation or body corporate that carries on the activity through legal practitioners.

(3) In this article “legal practitioner” has the meaning given by article 73B(2) or (4).]

[<sup>F167</sup>PART 7 **U.K.**  
REVOCATIONS]

**Textual Amendments**

**F167** Pt. 7 heading inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **37**

**Revocation **U.K.****

**74.** The Orders specified in the first column of Schedule 6 are revoked to the extent specified in the third column of that Schedule.

*Jean Ryan  
Tom Watson*  
Two of the Lords Commissioners of Her  
Majesty's Treasury



SCHEDULE 1 U.K.

Article 4

**PART I** U.K.

*Controlled Activities*

**Accepting deposits** U.K.

1. Accepting deposits is a controlled activity if—
  - (a) money received by way of deposit is lent to others; or
  - (b) any other activity of the person accepting the deposit is financed wholly, or to a material extent, out of the capital of or interest on money received by way of deposit,

and the person accepting the deposit holds himself out as accepting deposits on a day to day basis.

**Effecting or carrying out contracts of insurance** U.K.

- 2.—(1) Effecting a contract of insurance as principal is a controlled activity.
- (2) Carrying out a contract of insurance as principal is a controlled activity.
- (3) There is excluded from sub-paragraph (1) or (2) the effecting or carrying out of a contract of insurance of the kind described in article 12 of the Regulated Activities Order by a person who does not otherwise carry on an activity falling within those sub-paragraphs.

**Dealing in securities [F168, qualifying cryptoassets] and contractually based investments** U.K.

3.—(1) Buying, selling, subscribing for or underwriting securities [F169, structured deposits][F170, qualifying cryptoassets] or contractually based investments F171... as principal or agent is a controlled activity.

(2) A person does not carry on the activity in sub-paragraph (1) by accepting an instrument creating or acknowledging indebtedness in respect of any loan, credit, guarantee or other similar financial accommodation or assurance which he has made, granted or provided.

(3) The reference in sub-paragraph (2) to a person accepting an instrument includes a reference to a person becoming a party to an instrument otherwise than as a debtor or a surety.

**Textual Amendments**

**F168** Words in Sch. 1 para. 3 heading inserted (8.6.2023 for specified purposes, 7.10.2023 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/612\)](#), arts. 1(2), **8(a)(i)** (with art. 11)

**F169** Words in Sch. 1 para. 3(1) inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(a)**

**F170** Words in Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 3(1) inserted (8.6.2023 for specified purposes, 7.10.2023 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/612\)](#), arts. 1(2), **8(a)(ii)** (with art. 11)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

**F171** Words in [Sch. 1 para. 3\(1\)](#) omitted (28.1.2021 for specified purposes, 30.7.2022 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2021 \(S.I. 2021/90\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **5(2)**

## Arranging deals in investments **U.K.**

4.—(1) Making arrangements for another person (whether as principal or agent) to buy, sell, subscribe for or underwrite a particular investment which is—

(a) a security;

[<sup>F172</sup>(aa) a structured deposit;]

[<sup>F173</sup>(ab) a qualifying cryptoasset;]

(b) a contractually based investment; or

(c) an investment of the kind specified by paragraph 24, or paragraph 27 so far as relevant to that paragraph,

is a controlled activity.

(2) Making arrangements with a view to a person who participates in the arrangements buying, selling, subscribing for or underwriting investments falling within sub-paragraph (1)(a), [<sup>F174</sup>(aa),][<sup>F175</sup>(ab),] (b) or (c) (whether as principal or agent) is a controlled activity.

(3) A person does not carry on an activity falling within paragraph (2) merely by providing means by which one party to a transaction (or potential transaction) is able to communicate with other such parties.

### Textual Amendments

**F172** Sch. 1 para. 4(1)(aa) inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(b)(i)**

**F173** Sch. 1 para. 4(1)(ab) inserted (8.6.2023 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/612\)](#), arts. 1(2), **8(b)(i)** (with art. 11)

**F174** Word in Sch. 1 para. 4(2) inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(b)(ii)**

**F175** Word in Sch. 1 para. 4(2) inserted (8.6.2023 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/612\)](#), arts. 1(2), **8(b)(ii)** (with art. 11)

## [<sup>F176</sup>Operating a multilateral trading facility **U.K.**

4A. Operating a multilateral trading facility on which MiFID instruments are traded is a controlled activity.]

### Textual Amendments

**F176** Sch. 1 para. 4A inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **40(2)(a)**

**[<sup>F177</sup>Operating an organised trading facility U.K.]**

**4AA.** Operating an organised trading facility on which non-equity MiFID instruments are traded is a controlled activity.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F177** Sch. 1 para. 4AA inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(c)**

**Credit broking U.K.]**

**4B.—**(1) Each of the following is a controlled activity—

- (a) effecting an introduction of an individual or relevant recipient of credit to a person who enters into as lender relevant credit agreements [<sup>F178</sup>(other than credit agreements which are exempt agreements under the relevant provisions)] by way of business;
- [<sup>F179</sup>(b) effecting an introduction of an individual or relevant recipient of credit to a person who, by way of business, enters into as owner regulated consumer hire agreements or agreements which would be regulated consumer hire agreements but for article 60O (exempt agreements: exemptions relating to nature of agreement) or article 60Q (exempt agreements: exemptions relating to the nature of the hirer) of the Regulated Activities Order;]
- (c) effecting an introduction of an individual or relevant recipient of credit to a person who carries on an activity of the kind specified in paragraph (a) or (b) by way of business;
- (d) presenting or offering an agreement which would (if entered into) be a relevant credit agreement [<sup>F180</sup>(other than a credit agreement which is an exempt agreement under the relevant provisions)] to an individual or relevant recipient of credit;
- (e) assisting an individual or relevant recipient of credit by undertaking preparatory work in respect of a relevant credit agreement [<sup>F181</sup>(other than a credit agreement which is an exempt agreement under the relevant provisions)];
- (f) entering into a relevant credit agreement [<sup>F182</sup>(other than a credit agreement which is an exempt agreement under the relevant provisions)] on behalf of a lender.

[<sup>F183</sup>(1A) But an activity is not a controlled activity falling within sub-paragraph (1) to the extent that it is a controlled activity falling within paragraph 10A (arranging qualifying credit etc.).]

[<sup>F184</sup>(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1)—

- (a) “relevant provisions” are article 60E(5) (exempt agreements: exemptions relating to the nature of the lender) and article 60F(exempt agreements: exemptions relating to number of repayments to be made) of the Regulated Activities Order;
- (b) it is immaterial whether the relevant credit agreement or the consumer hire agreement is subject to the law of a country other than the United Kingdom.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F178** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4B(1)(a) inserted (24.3.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/853\)](#), arts. 1(2), **4(4)(a)**

**F179** Sch. 1 para. 4B(1)(b) substituted (24.3.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/853\)](#), arts. 1(2), **4(4)(b)**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

- F180** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4B(1)(d) inserted (24.3.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/853\)](#), arts. 1(2), **4(4)(c)**
- F181** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4B(1)(e) inserted (24.3.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/853\)](#), arts. 1(2), **4(4)(c)**
- F182** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4B(1)(f) inserted (24.3.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/853\)](#), arts. 1(2), **4(4)(c)**
- F183** Sch. 1 para. 4B(1A) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(8)(a)**
- F184** Sch. 1 para. 4B(2) substituted (24.3.2015) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/853\)](#), arts. 1(2), **4(4)(d)**

### [<sup>F185</sup>Operating an electronic system in relation to lending **U.K.**

**4C.**—(1) Where the [<sup>F186</sup>conditions in sub-paragraphs (2), (2A) and (2C) are] satisfied, operating an electronic system which enables the operator (“A”) to facilitate persons (“B” and “C”) becoming the lender and borrower under a paragraph 4C agreement is a controlled activity.

(2) The condition [<sup>F187</sup>in this sub-paragraph] is that the system operated by A is capable of determining which agreements should be made available to each of B and C (whether in accordance with general instructions provided to A by B or C or otherwise).

[<sup>F188</sup>(2A) The condition in this sub-paragraph is that A, or another person (“X”) acting under an arrangement with A or at A’s direction, undertakes to—

- (a) receive payments in respect of [<sup>F189</sup>either interest or capital or both] due under the agreement from C, and
- (b) make payments in respect of [<sup>F190</sup>either interest or capital or both] due under the agreement to B.

(2B) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2A)—

- (a) an agreement by A to appoint X to perform the activities in that paragraph is to be treated as an undertaking by A within the meaning of that sub-paragraph;
- (b) it is immaterial that—
  - (i) payments may be subject to conditions;
  - (ii) A, or X, may be entitled to retain a portion or the entirety of any payment received from C.

(2C) The condition in this sub-paragraph is that A, or another person (“X”) acting under an arrangement with A or at A’s direction, undertakes to perform, or A undertakes to appoint or direct another person to perform, either or both of the following—

- (a) to take steps to procure the payment of a debt under the agreement;
- (b) to exercise or enforce rights under the agreement on behalf of B.]

[<sup>F191</sup>(2D) Where A carries on the activity specified by sub-paragraph (1), it is a controlled activity for A to operate an electronic system where—

- (a) that system enables A to facilitate a person (“B”) assuming the rights of the lender under a paragraph 4C agreement by assignment or operation of law, and
- (b) the conditions in sub-paragraphs (2), (2A) and (2C) are satisfied where C is the borrower under the agreement in paragraph (a).]

(3) The following are controlled activities if carried on by A in the course of, or in connection with, the carrying on by A of the activity specified by [F192sub-paragraph] (1) [F193or (2D)]—

- (a) presenting or offering paragraph 4C agreements to [F194either B or C] with a view to B becoming the lender under the paragraph 4C agreement [F195or] C becoming the borrower under the paragraph 4C agreement,
- (b) furnishing information relevant to the financial standing of a person (“Y”) with a view to assisting in the determination as to whether another person should—
  - (i) enter into, as the lender, a paragraph 4C agreement with Y, or
  - (ii) assume the rights of the lender under a paragraph 4C agreement under which Y is the borrower,
- (c) taking steps to procure the payment of a debt due under a paragraph 4C agreement,
- (d) [F196taking steps to perform duties, or exercise or enforce] rights under a paragraph 4C agreement on behalf of the lender,
- (e) [F197taking steps with a view to] ascertaining whether a credit information agency (within the meaning given by article 89A(6)) holds information relevant to the financial standing of an individual or relevant person,
- (f) [F198taking steps with a view to] ascertaining the contents of such information,
- (g) [F199taking steps with a view to] securing the correction of, the omission of anything from, or the making of any other kind of modification of, such information, F200 ...
- (h) [F201taking steps with a view to] securing that a credit information agency which holds such information—
  - (i) stops holding the information, or
  - (ii) does not provide it to any other person[F202, or
- (i) giving advice in relation to the taking of any of the steps in sub-paragraphs (e) to (h)]

[F203(4) A “paragraph 4C agreement” is an agreement by which one person provides another person with credit and in relation to which—

- (a) the condition in sub-paragraph (4A) is satisfied, and
- (b) the condition in either sub-paragraph (5) or (6) is satisfied, or was satisfied at the time the agreement was entered into.

(4A) The condition in this sub-paragraph is that A does not provide credit, assume the rights (by assignment or operation of law) of a person who provided credit, or receive credit under the agreement.]

(5) The condition in this [F204sub-paragraph] is that the lender is an individual or relevant person.

(6) The condition in this [F205sub-paragraph] is that the borrower is an individual or relevant person and—

- (a) the lender provides the borrower with credit less than or equal to £25,000, or
- (b) the agreement is not entered into by the borrower wholly or predominantly for the purposes of a business carried on, or intended to be carried on, by the borrower.

(7) Paragraphs (5) and (6) of article 60C of the Regulated Activities Order (exempt agreements: exemptions relating to nature of agreement) apply for the purposes of paragraph (6)(b).

(8) It is immaterial for the purposes of this paragraph whether the lender is carrying on a regulated activity.

[F206(9) In this paragraph—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

“assignment”, in relation to Scotland, means assignation;

“borrower” means a person who receives credit under a paragraph 4C agreement or a person to whom the rights and duties of a borrower under such an agreement have passed by assignment or operation of law;

“credit” has the meaning given by article 60L of the Regulated Activities Order;

“lender” means—

- (a) a person providing credit under a paragraph 4C agreement, or
- (b) a person who by assignment or operation of law has assumed the rights of a person who provided credit under such an agreement;

“relevant person” means—

- (a) a partnership consisting of two or three persons not all of whom are bodies corporate, or
- (b) an unincorporated body of persons which does not consist entirely of bodies corporate and is not a partnership.]

[<sup>F207</sup>(10) For the purposes of the application of section 21(9) and (10) of the Act (restrictions on financial promotion) to an activity of a kind specified by this paragraph, paragraph 26D of this Schedule (relevant credit agreements), and article 4 (definition of controlled activities and controlled investments) in so far as it relates to that paragraph, [<sup>F208</sup>have] effect as if the reference to a relevant credit agreement in paragraph 26D includes a reference to a paragraph 4C agreement.]]

### Textual Amendments

- F185** Sch. 1 paras. 4B, 4C inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(2)(6), **17(6)(a)**
- F186** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4C(1) substituted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/366), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(8)(b)(i)**
- F187** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4C(2) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/366), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(8)(b)(ii)**
- F188** Sch. 1 paras. 4C(2A)-(2C) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/366), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(8)(b)(iii)**
- F189** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4C(2A)(a) substituted (17.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/392), arts. 1(2)(3)(a), **6(2)(a)** (with Pt. 5)
- F190** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4C(2A)(b) substituted (17.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/392), arts. 1(2)(3)(a), **6(2)(a)** (with Pt. 5)
- F191** Sch. 1 para. 4C(2D) inserted (17.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/392), arts. 1(2)(3)(a), **6(2)(b)** (with Pt. 5)
- F192** Word in Sch. 1 para. 4C(3) substituted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/366), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(8)(b)(iv)**
- F193** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4C(3) inserted (17.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/392), arts. 1(2)(3)(a), **6(2)(c)(i)** (with Pt. 5)
- F194** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4C(3)(a) substituted (17.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/392), arts. 1(2)(3)(a), **6(2)(c)(ii)(aa)** (with Pt. 5)

- F195** Word in Sch. 1 para. 4C(3)(a) substituted (17.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/392), arts. 1(2)(3)(a), 6(2)(c)(ii)(bb) (with Pt. 5)
- F196** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4C(3)(d) substituted (17.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/392), arts. 1(2)(3)(a), 6(2)(c)(iii) (with Pt. 5)
- F197** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4C(3)(e) inserted (17.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/392), arts. 1(2)(3)(a), 6(2)(c)(iv) (with Pt. 5)
- F198** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4C(3)(f) inserted (17.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/392), arts. 1(2)(3)(a), 6(2)(c)(iv) (with Pt. 5)
- F199** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4C(3)(g) inserted (17.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/392), arts. 1(2)(3)(a), 6(2)(c)(iv) (with Pt. 5)
- F200** Word in Sch. 1 para. 4C(3)(g) deleted (17.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/392), arts. 1(2)(3)(a), 6(2)(c)(v) (with Pt. 5)
- F201** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4C(3)(h) inserted (17.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/392), arts. 1(2)(3)(a), 6(2)(c)(iv) (with Pt. 5)
- F202** Sch. 1 para. 4C(3)(i) and preceding word inserted (17.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/392), arts. 1(2)(3)(a), 6(2)(c)(vi) (with Pt. 5)
- F203** Sch. 1 para. 4C(4)(4A) substituted for Sch. 1 para. 4C(4) (17.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/392), arts. 1(2)(3)(a), 6(2)(d) (with Pt. 5)
- F204** Word in Sch. 1 para. 4C(5) substituted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/366), arts. 1(3)(4), 10(8)(b)(vi)
- F205** Word in Sch. 1 para. 4C(6) substituted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/366), arts. 1(3)(4), 10(8)(b)(vii)
- F206** Sch. 1 para. 4C(9) substituted (17.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/392), arts. 1(2)(3)(a), 6(2)(e) (with Pt. 5)
- F207** Sch. 1 para. 4C(10) inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/366), arts. 1(3)(4), 10(8)(b)(viii)
- F208** Word in Sch. 1 para. 4C(10) substituted (17.3.2016) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/392), arts. 1(2)(3)(a), 6(2)(f) (with Pt. 5)

## Managing investments **U.K.**

5. Managing assets belonging to another person, in circumstances involving the exercise of discretion, is a controlled activity if—

- (a) the assets consist of or include any investment which is a security [<sup>F209</sup>, structured deposit]<sup>F210</sup>, a qualifying cryptoasset] or a contractually based investment; or
- (b) the arrangements for their management are such that the assets may consist of or include such investments, and either the assets have at any time since 29th April 1988 done so, or the arrangements have at any time (whether before or after that date) been held out as arrangements under which the assets would do so.

### Textual Amendments

- F209** Words in Sch. 1 para. 5(a) inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2017 (S.I. 2017/488), art. 1(2), Sch. para. 9(10)(d)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

**F210** Words in Sch. 1 para. 5(a) inserted (8.6.2023 for specified purposes) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) (Amendment) Order 2023 (S.I. 2023/612), arts. 1(2), **8(c)** (with art. 11)

### [<sup>F211</sup>Debt adjusting **U.K.**

**5A.**—(1) The following activities are, when carried on in relation to debts due under a relevant credit agreement, controlled activities—

- (a) negotiating with the lender, on behalf of the borrower, terms for the discharge of a debt;
- (b) taking over, in return for payments by the borrower, that person's obligation to discharge a debt;
- (c) any similar activity concerned with the liquidation of a debt.

(2) The following activities are, when carried on in relation to debts due under a consumer hire agreement, controlled activities—

- (a) negotiating with the owner, on behalf of the hirer, terms for the discharge of a debt;
- (b) taking over, in return for payments by the hirer, that person's obligation to discharge a debt;
- (c) any similar activity concerned with the liquidation of a debt.

#### Textual Amendments

**F211** Sch. 1 paras. 5A, 5B inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(2)(6), **17(6)(b)**

### Debt-counselling **U.K.**

**5B.**—(1) Advising a borrower about the liquidation of a debt due under a relevant credit agreement is a controlled activity.

(2) Advising a hirer about the liquidation of a debt due under a consumer hire agreement is a controlled activity.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F211** Sch. 1 paras. 5A, 5B inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1881), arts. 1(2)(6), **17(6)(b)**

### Safeguarding and administering investments **U.K.**

**6.**—(1) The activity consisting of both—

- (a) the safeguarding of assets belonging to another; and
- (b) the administration of those assets,

or arranging for one or more other persons to carry on that activity, is a controlled activity if either the condition in paragraph (a) or (b) of sub-paragraph (2) is met.

(2) The condition is that—

- (a) the assets consist of or include any investment which is a security or a contractually based investment; or



- (b) the arrangements for their safeguarding and administration are such that the assets may consist of or include investments of the kind mentioned in sub-paragraph (a) and either the assets have at any time since 1st June 1997 done so, or the arrangements have at any time (whether before or after that date) been held out as ones under which such investments would be safeguarded and administered.
- (3) For the purposes of this article—
  - (a) it is immaterial that title to the assets safeguarded and administered is held in uncertificated form;
  - (b) it is immaterial that the assets safeguarded and administered may be transferred to another person, subject to a commitment by the person safeguarding and administering them, or arranging for their safeguarding and administration, that they will be replaced by equivalent assets at some future date or when so requested by the person to whom they belong.
- (4) For the purposes of this article, the following activities do not constitute the administration of assets—
  - (a) providing information as to the number of units or the value of any assets safeguarded;
  - (b) converting currency;
  - (c) receiving documents relating to an investment solely for the purpose of onward transmission to, from or at the direction of the person to whom the investment belongs.

#### Advising on investments **U.K.**

- 7.—<sup>[F212]</sup>(1) Advising a person is a controlled activity if the advice is—
- (a) given to the person in his capacity as an investor or potential investor, or in his capacity as agent for an investor or a potential investor; and
  - (b) advice on the merits of his doing any of the following (whether as principal or agent)—
    - (i) buying, selling, subscribing for or underwriting a particular investment which is a security <sup>[F213]</sup>, structured deposit<sup>[F214]</sup>, a qualifying cryptoasset<sup>[F214]</sup> or a contractually based investment; or
    - (ii) exercising any right conferred by such an investment to buy, sell, subscribe for or underwrite such an investment.
- <sup>[F215]</sup>(2) Advising a person is a controlled activity if the advice is—
- (a) given to the person in that person's capacity as a lender or potential lender under a relevant paragraph 4C agreement, or in that person's capacity as an agent for a lender or potential lender under such an agreement; and
  - (b) advice on the merits of the person doing any of the following (whether as principal or agent)—
    - (i) entering into a relevant paragraph 4C agreement as a lender or assuming the rights of a lender under such an agreement,
    - (ii) providing instructions to an operator with a view to entering into a relevant paragraph 4C agreement as a lender or to assuming the rights of a lender under such an agreement by assignment or operation of law, where the instructions involve—
      - (aa) accepting particular parameters for the terms of the agreement presented by an operator,
      - (bb) choosing between options governing the parameters of the terms of the agreement presented by an operator, or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

- (cc) specifying the parameters of the terms of the agreement by other means,
  - (iii) enforcing or exercising the lender’s rights under a relevant paragraph 4C agreement,  
or
  - (iv) assigning rights under a relevant paragraph 4C agreement.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2)—

“operator” means a person carrying on a controlled activity of the kind specified by paragraph 4C(1) or (2D), and

“relevant paragraph 4C agreement” means a paragraph 4C agreement (within the meaning of that paragraph) which has been, or is to be, entered into with the facilitation of a person carrying on a controlled activity of the kind specified by paragraph 4C(1) or (2D) not in contravention of the general prohibition.

(4) For the purposes of the application of section 21(9) and (10) of the Act (restrictions on financial promotion) to an activity of a kind specified by sub-paragraph (2), paragraph 26D of this Schedule (relevant credit agreements), and article 4 (definition of controlled activities and controlled investments) in so far as it relates to that paragraph, have effect as if the reference to a relevant credit agreement in paragraph 26D includes a reference to a paragraph 4C agreement.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F212** Sch. 1 para. 7 renumbered as Sch. 1 para. 7(1) (17.3.2016 for specified purposes, 6.4.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/392\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3)(d), **6(3)(a)** (with Pt. 5)
- F213** Words in Sch. 1 para. 7(1)(b)(i) inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(e)**
- F214** Words in Sch. 1 para. 7(1)(b)(i) inserted (8.6.2023 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/612\)](#), arts. 1(2), **8(d)** (with art. 11)
- F215** Sch. 1 para. 7(2)-(4) inserted (17.3.2016 for specified purposes, 6.4.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/392\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3)(d), **6(3)(b)** (with Pt. 5)

#### Advising on syndicate participation at Lloyd's **U.K.**

**8.** Advising a person to become, or continue or cease to be, a member of a particular Lloyd’s syndicate is a controlled activity.

#### Providing funeral plan contracts **U.K.**

**9.—(1)** Entering as provider into a qualifying funeral plan contract is a controlled activity.

[<sup>F216</sup>(1A) Carrying out a qualifying funeral plan contract as provider is a controlled activity.]

(2) A “qualifying funeral plan contract” is a contract under which—

- (a) a person (“the customer”) makes one or more payments to another person (“the provider”);
- (b) the provider undertakes to provide, or to secure that another person provides, a funeral in the United Kingdom for the customer (or some other person who is living at the date when the contract is entered into) on his death; and

[<sup>F217</sup>(c) the provider is a person who carries on a regulated activity specified in article 59 of the Regulated Activities Order and includes a person who has assumed the undertaking

referred to in article 59(2)(b) of that Order as a result of the novation, assignment or transfer by operation of law of an existing qualifying funeral plan contract.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F216** Sch. 1 para. 9(1A) inserted (28.1.2021 for specified purposes, 30.7.2022 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2021 \(S.I. 2021/90\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **5(3)(a)**
- F217** Sch. 1 para. 9(2)(c) substituted (28.1.2021 for specified purposes, 30.7.2022 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2021 \(S.I. 2021/90\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **5(3)(b)**

#### Providing qualifying credit **U.K.**

- 10.**—(1) Providing qualifying credit is a controlled activity.
- (2) “Qualifying credit” is a credit provided pursuant to an agreement under which—
- (a) the lender is a person who carries on the regulated activity specified in article 61 of the Regulated Activities Order; and
  - (b) the obligation of the borrower to repay is secured (in whole or in part) on land.
- (3) “Credit” includes a cash loan and any other form of financial accommodation.

#### Arranging qualifying credit etc. **U.K.**

- 10A.**—<sup>F218</sup>(1) Making arrangements—
- (a) for another person to enter as borrower into an agreement for the provision of qualifying credit; or
  - (b) for a borrower under a regulated mortgage contract <sup>F219</sup>falling within sub-paragraph (2)] to vary the terms of that contract in such a way as to vary his obligations under that contract,
- is a controlled activity.
- <sup>F220</sup>(2) A regulated mortgage contract falls within this sub-paragraph if—
- (a) the contract was entered into on or after 31st October 2004; or
  - (b) the contract—
    - (i) was entered into before 31st October 2004; and
    - (ii) was a regulated credit agreement immediately before 21st March 2016.
- (3) In this paragraph “regulated mortgage contract” has the meaning given by article 61(3) of the Regulated Activities Order.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F218** Sch. 1 para. 10A renumbered as Sch. 1 para. 10A(1) (17.3.2016 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/392\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3)(c), **6(4)(a)** (with Pt. 5)
- F219** Words in Sch. 1 para. 10A(1)(b) substituted (17.3.2016 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/392\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3)(c), **6(4)(b)** (with Pt. 5)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

**F220** Sch. 1 para. 10A(2)(3) inserted (17.3.2016 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/392\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3)(c), **6(4)(c)** (with Pt. 5)

### Advising on qualifying credit etc. **U.K.**

**10B.**—(1) Advising a person is a controlled activity if the advice is—

- (a) given to the person in his capacity as a borrower or potential borrower; and
- (b) advice on the merits of his doing any of the following—
  - (i) entering into an agreement for the provision of qualifying credit, or
  - (ii) varying the terms of a regulated mortgage contract [<sup>F221</sup>falling within sub-paragraph (1A)] in such a way as to vary his obligations under that contract.

[<sup>F222</sup>(1A) A regulated mortgage contract falls within this sub-paragraph if—

- (a) the contract was entered into on or after 31st October 2004; or
- (b) the contract—
  - (i) was entered into before 31st October 2004; and
  - (ii) was a regulated credit agreement immediately before 21st March 2016.]

(2) In this paragraph, “borrower” and “regulated mortgage contract” have the meaning given by article 61(3) of the Regulated Activities Order.

#### Textual Amendments

**F221** Words in Sch. 1 para. 10B(1) substituted (17.3.2016 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/392\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3)(c), **6(5)(a)** (with Pt. 5)

**F222** Sch. 1 para. 10B(1A) inserted (17.3.2016 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/392\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3)(c), **6(5)(b)** (with Pt. 5)

### [<sup>F223</sup>Providing relevant consumer credit **U.K.**

**10BA.** Entering into a relevant credit agreement[<sup>F224</sup>, other than an agreement under which qualifying credit within the meaning of paragraph 10 is provided,] as lender, or exercising or having the rights to exercise the rights of the lender under such an agreement, is a controlled activity.

#### Textual Amendments

**F223** Sch. 1 paras. 10BA, 10BB inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **17(6)(c)**

**F224** Words in Sch. 1 para. 10BA inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(8)(c)**

### [<sup>F225</sup>Advising on certain relevant consumer credit relating to land **U.K.**

**10BAA.** Advising a person is a controlled activity if the advice—

- (a) is given to the person in the person's capacity as a recipient of credit, or potential recipient of credit; and
- (b) consists of the provision of personal recommendations to the person in respect of one or more transactions relating to a relevant credit agreement where the person intends to use the credit to acquire or retain property rights in land or in an existing or projected building, other than an agreement under which qualifying credit within the meaning of paragraph 10 is provided.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F223** Sch. 1 paras. 10BA, 10BB inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **17(6)(c)**

**F225** Sch. 1 para. 10BAA inserted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 12(2)** (with Pt. 4)

#### Providing consumer hire **U.K.**

**10BB.** Entering into a regulated consumer hire agreement<sup>F226</sup>, or an agreement that would be such an agreement but for article 60O (exempt agreements: exemptions relating to nature of agreement) or 60Q (exempt agreements: exemptions relating to nature of hirer) of the Regulated Activities Order,] as owner or exercising or having the right to exercise the rights of the owner under such an agreement is a controlled activity.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F223** Sch. 1 paras. 10BA, 10BB inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **17(6)(c)**

**F226** Words in Sch. 1 para. 10BB inserted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(8)(d)**

#### <sup>F227</sup>Providing a regulated home reversion plan **U.K.**

**10C.** Entering into a regulated home reversion plan as plan provider is a controlled activity.

#### Textual Amendments

**F227** Sch. 1 paras. 10C-10H inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **35(5)(a)**

#### Arranging a regulated home reversion plan **U.K.**

**10D.** Making arrangements—

- (a) for another person to enter as reversion seller or plan provider into a regulated home reversion plan; or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) for a reversion seller or a plan provider under a regulated home reversion plan, entered into on or after 6th April 2007 by him, to vary the terms of that plan in such a way as to vary his obligations under that plan,

is a controlled activity.

#### Textual Amendments

**F227** Sch. 1 paras. 10C-10H inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **35(5)(a)**

#### Advising on a regulated home reversion plan **U.K.**

**10E.** Advising a person is a controlled activity if the advice is—

- (a) given to the person in his capacity as reversion seller, potential reversion seller, plan provider or potential plan provider; and
- (b) advice on the merits of his doing either of the following—
- (i) entering into a regulated home reversion plan, or
- (ii) varying the terms of a regulated home reversion plan, entered into on or after 6th April 2007 by him, in such a way as to vary his obligations under that plan.

#### Textual Amendments

**F227** Sch. 1 paras. 10C-10H inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **35(5)(a)**

#### Providing a regulated home purchase plan **U.K.**

**10F.** Entering into a regulated home purchase plan as home purchase provider is a controlled activity.

#### Textual Amendments

**F227** Sch. 1 paras. 10C-10H inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **35(5)(a)**

#### Arranging a regulated home purchase plan **U.K.**

**10G.** Making arrangements—

- (a) for another person to enter as home purchaser into a regulated home purchase plan; or
- (b) for a home purchaser under a regulated home purchase plan, entered into on or after 6th April 2007 by him, to vary the terms of that plan in such a way as to vary his obligations under that plan,

is a controlled activity.

#### Textual Amendments

**F227** Sch. 1 paras. 10C-10H inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **35(5)(a)**

#### Advising on a regulated home purchase plan **U.K.**

**10H.** Advising a person is a controlled activity if the advice is—

- (a) given to the person in his capacity as home purchaser or potential home purchaser; and
- (b) advice on the merits of his doing either of the following—
  - (i) entering into a regulated home purchase plan, or
  - (ii) varying the terms of a regulated home purchase plan, entered into on or after 6th April 2007 by him, in such a way as to vary his obligations under that plan.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F227** Sch. 1 paras. 10C-10H inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **35(5)(a)**

#### [<sup>F228</sup> Providing a regulated sale and rent back agreement **U.K.**

**10I.** Entering into a regulated sale and rent back agreement as agreement provider is a controlled activity.

#### Textual Amendments

**F228** Sch. 1 paras. 10I-10K inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **30(4)(a)**

#### Arranging a regulated sale and rent back agreement **U.K.**

**10J.** Making arrangements—

- (a) for another person to enter as agreement seller or agreement provider into a regulated sale and rent back agreement; or
- (b) for an agreement seller or an agreement provider under a regulated sale and rent back agreement, entered into on or after 1st July 2009, to vary the terms of that plan in such a way as to vary the obligations of the agreement seller or the agreement provider under that plan,

is a controlled activity.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

#### Textual Amendments

**F228** Sch. 1 paras. 10I-10K inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **30(4)(a)**

#### Advising on a regulated sale and rent back agreement **U.K.**

**10K.** Advising a person (“A”) is a controlled activity if the advice is—

- (a) given to A in A’s capacity as agreement seller, potential agreement seller, agreement provider or potential agreement provider; and
- (b) advice on the merits of A doing either of the following—
  - (i) entering into a regulated sale and rent back agreement, or
  - (ii) varying the terms of a regulated sale and rent back agreement, entered into on or after 1st July 2009 by A, in such a way as to vary A’s obligations under that agreement.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F228** Sch. 1 paras. 10I-10K inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **30(4)(a)**

#### Agreeing to carry on specified kinds of activity **U.K.**

**11.** Agreeing to carry on any controlled activity falling within any of paragraphs 3 to [<sup>F229</sup>10BB] above [<sup>F230</sup>(other than paragraph 4A)] is a controlled activity.

#### Textual Amendments

**F229** Word in Sch. 1 para. 11 substituted (14.2.2014 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/366\)](#), arts. 1(3)(4), **10(8)(e)**

**F230** Words in Sch. 1 para. 11 inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **40(2)(b)**

### [<sup>F231</sup>PART 1A **U.K.**

#### CONTROLLED CLAIMS MANAGEMENT ACTIVITY

#### Textual Amendments

**F231** Sch. 1 Pt. 1A inserted (E.W.S.) (29.11.2018 for specified purposes, 1.4.2019 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Claims Management Activity\) Order 2018 \(S.I. 2018/1253\)](#), arts. 1(2)(3), **38**



**11A.—**(1) A claims management activity carried out in Great Britain is a controlled claims management activity.

(2) For the purposes of this paragraph, a claims management activity is one of the following activities:

- (a) seeking out persons who may have a claim, referring details of a claim or potential claim or a claimant or potential claimant to another person (including a person having the right to conduct litigation), or identifying a claim or potential claim or a claimant or potential claimant in respect of—
    - (i) a personal injury claim;
    - (ii) a financial services or financial product claim;
    - (iii) a housing disrepair claim;
    - (iv) a claim for a specified benefit;
    - (v) a criminal injury claim; or
    - (vi) an employment related claim.
  - (b) advising a claimant or potential claimant, investigating a claim or representing a claimant in respect of a personal injury claim;
  - (c) advising a claimant or potential claimant, investigating a claim or representing a claimant in respect of a financial services or financial product claim;
  - (d) advising a claimant or potential claimant, investigating a claim or representing a claimant in respect of a housing disrepair claim;
  - (e) advising a claimant or potential claimant, investigating a claim or representing a claimant in respect of a claim for a specified benefit;
  - (f) advising a claimant or potential claimant, investigating a claim or representing a claimant in respect of a criminal injury claim; or
  - (g) advising a claimant or potential claimant, investigating a claim or representing a claimant in respect of an employment related claim.
- (3) In this paragraph—
- (a) “claimant” includes, in civil proceedings in Scotland, a pursuer;
  - (b) “defendant” includes, in civil proceedings in Scotland, a defender;
  - (c) “personal injury claim” means a claim for personal injury within the meaning of the Civil Procedure Rules 1998 in England and Wales and an action for damages for, or arising from, personal injuries within the meaning set out in section 8(7) of the Civil Litigation (Expenses and Group Proceedings) (Scotland) Act 2018 in Scotland;
  - (d) “financial services or financial product claim” includes a claim made under section 75 of the Consumer Credit Act 1974;
  - (e) “housing disrepair claim” means a claim under section 11 of the Landlord and Tenant Act 1985 or section 4 of the Defective Premises Act 1972 in England and Wales or an application in respect of the repairing standard under section 22 of the Housing (Scotland) Act 2006, or claims in relation to the disrepair of premises under a term of a tenancy agreement or lease or under the common law relating to nuisance or negligence but does not include claims for statutory nuisance under section 82 of the Environmental Protection Act 1990;
  - (f) “a claim for a specified benefit” means a claim for one of the following benefits—
    - (i) industrial injuries benefit, within the meaning given by section 94 of the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

- (ii) any supplement or additional allowance, or increase of benefit or allowance to which a recipient of an industrial injuries benefit may be entitled under that Act or any other Act;
  - (iii) a benefit under a scheme referred to in paragraph 2 or 4 of Schedule 8 to that Act; or
  - (iv) a benefit under the Pneumoconiosis etc. (Workers' Compensation) Act 1979.
- (g) "criminal injury claim" means a claim under the Criminal Injuries Compensation Scheme established under the Criminal Injuries Compensation Act 1995;
  - (h) "employment related claim" includes a claim in relation to wages and salaries and other employment related payments and claims in relation to wrongful or unfair dismissal, redundancy, discrimination and harassment;
  - (i) "investigating" means carrying out an investigation into, or commissioning the investigation of, the circumstances, merits or foundation of a claim; and
  - (j) "representing" means representation in writing or orally, regardless of the tribunal, body or person before which or to whom the representation is made.
- (4) In this paragraph, a person is to be treated as carrying on a controlled claims management activity in Great Britain when the activity is carried on—
- (a) by a person who is—
    - (i) an individual who is ordinarily resident in Great Britain; or
    - (ii) a person, other than an individual, who is constituted under the law of England and Wales or Scotland; or
  - (b) in respect of a claimant or potential claimant who is—
    - (i) an individual who is ordinarily resident in Great Britain; or
    - (ii) a person, other than an individual, who is constituted under the law of England and Wales or Scotland.
- (5) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (4) a person is "ordinarily resident" in Great Britain if that person satisfies the requirements of the Statutory Residence Test as set out in Schedule 45 to the Finance Act 2013 either—
- (a) at the time of the facts giving rise to the claim or potential claim; or
  - (b) at the time when the controlled claims management activity is carried out in respect of that claimant or potential claimant.]

## PART II U.K.

### *Controlled Investments*

- 12. A deposit.
- 13. Rights under a contract of insurance.
- 14.—(1) Shares or stock in the share capital of—
  - (a) any body corporate (wherever incorporated);
  - (b) any unincorporated body constituted under the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) includes—
  - (a) any shares of a class defined as deferred shares for the purposes of section 119 of the Building Societies Act 1986 <sup>M10</sup>;

- (b) any transferable shares in a body incorporated under the law of, or any part of, the United Kingdom relating to [<sup>F232</sup>co-operative and community benefit societies,] industrial and provident societies or credit unions <sup>F233</sup> ...
- (3) But subject to sub-paragraph (2) there are excluded from sub-paragraph (1) shares or stock in the share capital of—
  - (a) an open-ended investment company;
  - (b) a building society incorporated under the law of, or any part of, the United Kingdom;
  - (c) any body incorporated under the law of, or any part of, the United Kingdom relating to [<sup>F234</sup>co-operative and community benefit societies,] industrial and provident societies or credit unions;
  - <sup>F235</sup>(d) .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F232** Words in Sch. 1 para. 14(2)(b) inserted (1.8.2014) by [The Co-operative and Community Benefit Societies and Credit Unions Act 2010 \(Consequential Amendments\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1815\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. para. 15\(3\)](#)
- F233** Words in Sch. 1 para. 14(2)(b) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), [176\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by [S.I. 2020/1301](#), regs. 1, 3, [Sch. para. 33\(u\)](#) and with savings in [S.I. 2019/680](#), reg. 11 (as amended by [S.I. 2019/1212](#), regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, [Sch. 5 para. 1\(1\)](#)
- F234** Words in Sch. 1 para. 14(3)(c) inserted (1.8.2014) by [The Co-operative and Community Benefit Societies and Credit Unions Act 2010 \(Consequential Amendments\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/1815\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. para. 15\(3\)](#)
- F235** Sch. 1 para. 14(3)(d) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), [176\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by [S.I. 2020/1301](#), regs. 1, 3, [Sch. para. 33\(u\)](#) and with savings in [S.I. 2019/680](#), reg. 11 (as amended by [S.I. 2019/1212](#), regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, [Sch. 5 para. 1\(1\)](#)

**Marginal Citations**

- M10** 1986 c. 53.

**Instruments creating or acknowledging indebtedness** **U.K.**

- 15.**—(1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), such of the following as do not fall within [<sup>F236</sup>paragraph <sup>F237</sup>... 16]—
- (a) debentures;
  - (b) debenture stock;
  - (c) loan stock;
  - (d) bonds;
  - (e) certificates of deposit;
  - (f) any other instrument creating or acknowledging a present or future indebtedness.
- (2) If and to the extent that they would otherwise fall within sub-paragraph (1), there are excluded from that sub-paragraph—
- (a) any instrument acknowledging or creating indebtedness for, or for money borrowed to defray, the consideration payable under a contract for the supply of goods or services;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) a cheque or other bill of exchange, a banker's draft or a letter of credit (but not a bill of exchange accepted by a banker);
- (c) a banknote, a statement showing a balance on a current, deposit or saving account, a lease or other disposition of property, a heritable security; and
- (d) a contract of insurance.

<sup>F238</sup>(e) .....

(3) An instrument excluded from sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 16 by paragraph 16(2)(b) is not thereby to be taken to fall within sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph.

**Textual Amendments**

**F236** Words in Sch. 1 para. 15(1) substituted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(f)(i)**

**F237** Words in Sch. 1 para. 15(1) omitted (16.2.2011) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/133\)](#), arts. 1(2), **3(2)(a)** (with art. 4)

**F238** Sch. 1 para. 15(2)(e) omitted (16.2.2011) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/133\)](#), arts. 1(2), **3(2)(b)** (with art. 4)

<sup>F239</sup>**Alternative finance investment bonds** **U.K.**

**15A.**—(1) Rights under an alternative finance investment bond, to the extent that they do not fall within paragraph [<sup>F240</sup>15 or] 16.

(2) For the purposes of this paragraph, arrangements constitute an alternative finance investment bond if—

- (a) the arrangements provide for a person (“the bond-holder”) to pay a sum of money (“the capital”) to another (“the bond-issuer”);
- (b) the arrangements identify assets, or a class of assets, which the bond-issuer will acquire for the purpose of generating income or gains directly or indirectly (“the bond assets”);
- (c) the arrangements specify a period at the end of which they cease to have effect (“the bond term”);
- (d) the bond-issuer undertakes under the arrangements—
  - (i) to make a repayment in respect of the capital (“the redemption payment”) to the bond-holder during or at the end of the bond term (whether or not in instalments); and
  - (ii) to pay to the bond-holder other payments on one or more occasions during or at the end of the bond term (“the additional payments”);
- (e) the amount of the additional payments does not exceed an amount which would, at the time at which the bond is issued, be a reasonable commercial return on a loan of the capital; and

<sup>F241</sup>(f) the arrangements are—

- (i) a security that is admitted to the official list in accordance with Part 6 of the Act,
- (ii) a security that is admitted to an official list in the EEA (in accordance with the provisions of [Directive 2001/34/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council on the admission of securities to official stock exchange listing and on information to be published on those securities) and has been so admitted since before IP completion day,
- (iii) a security that is admitted to trading on a recognised investment exchange or a UK trading venue, or

- (iv) a security that is admitted to trading on an EU trading venue and has been so admitted since before IP completion day.]
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)—
- (a) the bond-issuer may acquire the bond assets before or after the arrangements take effect;
  - (b) the bond assets may be property of any kind, including rights in relation to property owned by someone other than the bond-issuer;
  - (c) the identification of the bond assets mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(b) and the undertakings mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(d) may (but need not) be described as, or accompanied by a document described as, a declaration of trust;
  - (d) the reference to a period in sub-paragraph (2)(c) includes any period specified to end upon the redemption of the bond by the bond-issuer;
  - (e) the bond-holder may (but need not) be entitled under the arrangements to terminate them, or participate in terminating them, before the end of the bond term;
  - (f) the amount of the additional payments may be—
    - (i) fixed at the beginning of the bond term;
    - (ii) determined wholly or partly by reference to the value of or income generated by the bond assets; or
    - (iii) determined in some other way;
  - (g) if the amount of the additional payments is not fixed at the beginning of the bond term, the reference in sub-paragraph (2)(e) to the amount of the additional payments is a reference to the maximum amount of the additional payments;
  - (h) the amount of the redemption payment may (but need not) be subject to reduction in the event of a fall in the value of the bond assets or in the rate of income generated by them; and
  - (i) entitlement to the redemption payment may (but need not) be capable of being satisfied (whether or not at the option of the bond-issuer or the bond-holder) by the issue or transfer of shares or other securities.
- (4) An instrument excluded from sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 16 by sub-paragraph (2)(b) of that paragraph is not thereby taken to fall within sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph. ]

#### Textual Amendments

- F239** Sch. 1 para. 15A inserted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(f)(iii)**
- F240** Words in Sch. 1 para. 15A(1) inserted (16.2.2011) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/133\)](#), arts. 1(2), **3(2)(c)** (with art. 4)
- F241** Sch. 1 para. 15A(2)(f) substituted (31.12.2020) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **176(3)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by [S.I. 2020/1301](#), regs. 1, 3, **Sch. para. 33(u)(w)** and with savings in [S.I. 2019/680](#), **reg. 11** (as amended by [S.I. 2019/1212](#), regs. 1(3), **22(3)**)); 2020 c. 1, **Sch. 5 para. 1(1)**

#### Government and public securities **U.K.**

- 16.**—(1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), loan stock, bonds and other instruments—
- (a) creating or acknowledging indebtedness; and
  - (b) issued by or on behalf of a government, local authority (whether in the United Kingdom or elsewhere) or international organisation.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) [<sup>F242</sup>Subject to sub-paragraph (3),] there are excluded from sub-paragraph (1)—
- (a) so far as applicable, the instruments mentioned in paragraph 15(2)(a) to (d);
  - (b) any instrument creating or acknowledging indebtedness in respect of—
    - (i) money received by the Director of Savings as deposits or otherwise in connection with the business of the National Savings Bank;
    - (ii) money raised under the National Loans Act 1968 <sup>M11</sup> under the auspices of the Director of Savings or treated as so raised by virtue of section 11(3) of the National Debt Act 1972 <sup>M12</sup>.

[<sup>F243</sup>(3) Sub-paragraph (2)(a) does not exclude an instrument which meets the requirements set out in paragraphs (a) to (e) of paragraph 15A(2).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F242** Words in Sch. 1 para. 16(2) inserted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(f)(iv)**

**F243** Sch. 1 para. 16(3) inserted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(f)(v)**

#### Marginal Citations

**M11** 1968 c. 13.

**M12** 1972 c. 65.

### Instruments giving entitlements to investments **U.K.**

**17.**—(1) Warrants and other instruments entitling the holder to subscribe for any investment falling within paragraph 14, 15 or 16.

(2) It is immaterial whether the investment to which the entitlement relates is in existence or identifiable.

(3) An investment falling within this paragraph shall not be regarded as falling within paragraph 21, 22 or 23.

### Certificates representing certain securities **U.K.**

**18.**—(1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), certificates or other instruments which confer contractual or property rights (other than rights consisting of an investment of the kind specified by paragraph 21)—

- (a) in respect of any investment of the kind specified by any of paragraphs 14 to 17 being an investment held by a person other than the person on whom the rights are conferred by the certificate or instrument; and
- (b) the transfer of which may be effected without the consent of that person.

(2) There is excluded from sub-paragraph (1) any instrument which confers rights in respect of two or more investments issued by different persons, or in respect of two or more different investments of the kind specified by paragraph 16 and issued by the same person.

### Units in a collective investment scheme **U.K.**

**19.** Units in a collective investment scheme.

## <sup>F244</sup>Rights under a pension scheme **U.K.**

- 20.—(1) Rights under a stakeholder pension scheme.
- (2) Rights under a personal pension scheme.
- (3) "Stakeholder pension scheme" and "personal pension scheme" have the meanings given by article 72(4).]

### Textual Amendments

**F244** Sch. 1 Pt. 2 para. 20 substituted (6.4.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1969\)](#), **arts. 1(2)(b), 12(3)**

## Options **U.K.**

- 21.—<sup>F245</sup>(1) Options to acquire or dispose of—
- (a) a security or contractually based investment (other than one of a kind specified in this paragraph);
  - (b) currency of the United Kingdom or of any other country or territory;
  - (c) palladium, platinum, gold or silver; <sup>F246</sup> ...
  - (d) an option to acquire or dispose of an investment falling within this paragraph by virtue of sub-paragraph (a), (b) or (c) <sup>F247</sup>;
  - (e) subject to sub-paragraph (4), an option to acquire or dispose of an option to which <sup>F248</sup>paragraph 5, 6, 7 or 10 of Part 1 of Schedule 2 (read with Articles 5, 6, 7, and 8 of the Commission Regulation) applies]]
- <sup>F249</sup>(2) Subject to sub-paragraph (4), options—
- (a) to which sub-paragraph (1) does not apply;
  - (b) which relate to commodities;
  - (c) which may be settled physically; and
  - (d) either—
    - (i) to which paragraph 5 or 6 of <sup>F250</sup>Part 1 of Schedule 2]] <sup>F251</sup>(read with Articles 5 and 6 of the Commission Regulation)] applies, or
    - (ii) which in accordance with Article <sup>F252</sup>7] of the Commission Regulation are to be considered as having the characteristics of other derivative financial instruments and not being for commercial purposes, and to which paragraph 7 of <sup>F253</sup>Part 1 of that Schedule] applies.
- (3) Subject to sub-paragraph (4), options—
- (a) to which sub-paragraph (1) does not apply;
  - (b) which may be settled physically; and
  - (c) to which paragraph 10 of <sup>F254</sup>Part 1 of Schedule 2] (read with <sup>F255</sup>Articles 7 and 8 of] the Commission Regulation) applies.
- (4) Sub-paragraphs (1)(e), (2) and (3) only apply to options in relation to which—
- <sup>F256</sup>(a) an investment firm or qualifying credit institution is providing or performing investment services and activities on a professional basis;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) a management company which has a Part 4A permission to do so is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 4 or 5 of Part 3 of Schedule 2 or the ancillary service specified in paragraph 1 of Part 3A of that Schedule;
- (c) a market operator is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 8 or 9 of Part 3 of that Schedule;
- (d) a full-scope UK AIFM which has a Part 4A permission to do so is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 1, 4 or 5 of Part 3 of that Schedule or the ancillary service specified in paragraph 1 of Part 3A of that Schedule.]

F257(5) .....

### Textual Amendments

- F245** Sch. 1 para. 21 renumbered as Sch. 1 para. 21(1) (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **40(3)(a)**
- F246** Word in Sch. 1 para. 21(1)(c) omitted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **40(3)(b)(i)**
- F247** Sch. 1 para. 21(1)(e) and semi-colon inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **40(3)(b)(ii)**
- F248** Words in Sch. 1 para. 21(1)(e) substituted (31.12.2020) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **176(4)(a)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F249** Sch. 1 para. 21(2)-(5) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **40(3)(c)**
- F250** Words in Sch. 1 para. 21(2)(d)(i) substituted (31.12.2020) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **176(4)(b)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F251** Words in Sch. 1 para. 21(2)(d)(i) inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(g)(ii)(aa)**
- F252** Word in Sch. 1 para. 21(2)(d)(ii) substituted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(g)(ii)(bb)**
- F253** Words in Sch. 1 para. 21(2)(d)(ii) substituted (31.12.2020) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **176(4)(c)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F254** Words in Sch. 1 para. 21(3)(c) substituted (31.12.2020) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **176(4)(d)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F255** Words in Sch. 1 para. 21(3)(c) inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(g)(iii)**
- F256** Sch. 1 para. 21(4)(a)-(d) substituted (31.12.2020) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **176(4)(e)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as



amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)

**F257** Sch. 1 para. 21(5) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019 (S.I. 2019/632), regs. 1(3), 176(4)(f) (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)

## Futures **U.K.**

**22.**—(1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), rights under a contract for the sale of a commodity or property of any other description under which delivery is to be made at a future date and at a price agreed on when the contract is made.

[<sup>F258</sup>(1A) Subject to sub-paragraph (1D), futures—

- (a) to which sub-paragraph (1) does not apply;
- (b) which relate to commodities;
- (c) which may be settled physically; and
- (d) to which paragraph 5 or 6 of [<sup>F259</sup>Part 1 of Schedule 2][<sup>F260</sup>(read with Articles 5 and 6 of the Commission Regulation)] applies.

(1B) Subject to sub-paragraph (1D), futures and forwards—

- (a) to which sub-paragraph (1) does not apply;
- (b) which relate to commodities;
- (c) which may be settled physically;
- (d) which in accordance with Article [<sup>F261</sup>7] of the Commission Regulation are to be considered as having the characteristics of other derivative financial instruments and not being for commercial purposes; and
- (e) to which paragraph 7 of [<sup>F262</sup>Part 1 of Schedule 2] applies.

(1C) Subject to sub-paragraph (1D), futures—

- (a) to which sub-paragraph (1) does not apply;
- (b) which may be settled physically; and
- (c) to which paragraph 10 of [<sup>F263</sup>Part 1 of Schedule 2] (read with [<sup>F264</sup>Articles 7 and 8 of] the Commission Regulation) applies.

[<sup>F265</sup>(1CA) Subject to sub-paragraph (1D), any other derivative contract, relating to currencies to which paragraph 4 of [<sup>F266</sup>Part 1 of Schedule 2] read with Article 10 of the Commission Regulation applies.]

(1D) Sub-paragraphs (1A), (1B)[<sup>F267</sup>, (1C) and (1CA)] only apply to futures[<sup>F268</sup>, forwards or derivative contracts] in relation to which—

- [<sup>F269</sup>(a) an investment firm or qualifying credit institution is providing or performing investment services and activities on a professional basis;
- (b) a management company which has a Part 4A permission to do so is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 4 or 5 of Part 3 of Schedule 2 or the ancillary service specified in paragraph 1 of Part 3A of that Schedule;
- (c) a market operator is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 8 or 9 of Part 3 of that Schedule;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) a full-scope UK AIFM which has a Part 4A permission to do so is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 1, 4 or 5 of Part 3 of that Schedule or the ancillary service specified in paragraph 1 of Part 3A of that Schedule.]

<sup>F270</sup>(1E) . . . . .]

(2) There are excluded from sub-paragraph (1) rights under any contract which is made for commercial and not investment purposes.

(3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2), in considering whether a contract is to be regarded as made for investment purposes or for commercial purposes, the indicators set out in article 84 of the Regulated Activities Order shall be applied in the same way as they are applied for the purposes of that article.

### Textual Amendments

- F258** Sch. 1 para. 22(1A)-(1E) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by *The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment No. 3) Order 2006* (S.I. 2006/3384), arts. 1(2), **40(4)**
- F259** Words in Sch. 1 para. 22(1A)(d) substituted (31.12.2020) by *The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019* (S.I. 2019/632), regs. 1(3), **176(5)(a)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F260** Words in Sch. 1 para. 22(1A)(d) inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by *The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2017* (S.I. 2017/488), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(h)(i)**
- F261** Word in Sch. 1 para. 22(1B)(d) substituted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by *The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2017* (S.I. 2017/488), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(h)(ii)**
- F262** Words in Sch. 1 para. 22(1B)(e) substituted (31.12.2020) by *The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019* (S.I. 2019/632), regs. 1(3), **176(5)(a)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F263** Words in Sch. 1 para. 22(1C)(c) substituted (31.12.2020) by *The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019* (S.I. 2019/632), regs. 1(3), **176(5)(a)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F264** Words in Sch. 1 para. 22(1C)(c) inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by *The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2017* (S.I. 2017/488), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(h)(iii)**
- F265** Sch. 1 para. 22(1CA) inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by *The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2017* (S.I. 2017/488), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(h)(iv)**
- F266** Words in Sch. 1 para. 22(1CA) substituted (31.12.2020) by *The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019* (S.I. 2019/632), regs. 1(3), **176(5)(b)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F267** Words in Sch. 1 para. 22(1D) substituted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by *The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2017* (S.I. 2017/488), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(h)(v)(aa)**
- F268** Words in Sch. 1 para. 22(1D) substituted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by *The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2017* (S.I. 2017/488), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(h)(v)(bb)**

- F269** Sch. 1 para. 22(1D)(a)-(d) substituted (31.12.2020) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019 (S.I. 2019/632), regs. 1(3), **176(5)(c)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F270** Sch. 1 para. 22(1E) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019 (S.I. 2019/632), regs. 1(3), **176(5)(d)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)

### Contracts for differences etc. **U.K.**

- 23.—(1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), rights under—
- (a) a contract for differences; or
  - (b) any other contract the purpose or pretended purpose of which is to secure a profit or avoid a loss by reference to fluctuations in—
    - (i) the value or price of property of any description;
    - (ii) an index or other factor designated for that purpose in the contract.
- (2) There are excluded from sub-paragraph (1)—
- (a) rights under a contract if the parties intend that the profit is to be secured or the loss is to be avoided by one or more of the parties taking delivery of any property to which the contract relates;
  - (b) rights under a contract under which money is received by way of deposit on terms that any interest or other return to be paid on the sum deposited will be calculated by reference to fluctuations in an index or other factor;
  - (c) rights under any contract under which—
    - (i) money is received by the Director of Savings as deposits or otherwise in connection with the business of the National Savings Bank; or
    - (ii) money is raised under the National Loans Act 1968 under the auspices of the Director of Savings or treated as so raised by virtue of section 11(3) of the National Debt Act 1972;
  - (d) rights under a qualifying contract of insurance.
- [<sup>F271</sup>(3) Subject to sub-paragraph (4), derivative instruments for the transfer of credit risk—
- (a) to which neither paragraph 21 nor sub-paragraph (1) applies; and
  - (b) to which paragraph 8 of [<sup>F272</sup>Part 1 of Schedule 2] applies.
- (4) Sub-paragraph (3) only applies to derivatives in relation to which—
- [<sup>F273</sup>(a) an investment firm or qualifying credit institution is providing or performing investment services and activities on a professional basis;
- (b) a management company which has a Part 4A permission to do so is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 4 or 5 of Part 3 of Schedule 2 or the ancillary service specified in paragraph 1 of Part 3A of that Schedule;
  - (c) a market operator is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 8 or 9 of Part 3 of that Schedule;
  - (d) a full-scope UK AIFM which has a Part 4A permission to do so is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 1, 4 or 5 of Part 3 of that Schedule or the ancillary service specified in paragraph 1 of Part 3A of that Schedule.]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

- [<sup>F274</sup>(4A) Subject to sub-paragraph (4B), a derivative contract of a binary or other fixed outcomes nature—
- (a) to which sub-paragraph (1) does not apply;
  - (b) which is settled in cash; and
  - (c) which is a financial instrument to which paragraph 4, 5, 6, 7 or 10 of [<sup>F275</sup>Part 1 of Schedule 2] read with Articles 5 to 8 and 10 of the Commission Regulation applies.
- (4B) Sub-paragraph (4A) only applies to derivatives in relation to which—
- [<sup>F276</sup>(a) an investment firm or qualifying credit institution is providing or performing investment services and activities on a professional basis;
- (b) a management company which has a Part 4A permission to do so is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 4 or 5 of Part 3 of Schedule 2 or the ancillary service specified in paragraph 1 of Part 3A of that Schedule;
  - (c) a market operator is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 8 or 9 of Part 3 of that Schedule;
  - (d) a full-scope UK AIFM which has a Part 4A permission to do so is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 1, 4 or 5 of Part 3 of that Schedule or the ancillary service specified in paragraph 1 of Part 3A of that Schedule.]
  - (e) a person is carrying on the controlled activity referred to in paragraph 4(2).]

<sup>F277</sup>(5) ..... ]

**Textual Amendments**

- F271** Sch. 1 para. 23(3)-(5) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **40(5)**
- F272** Words in Sch. 1 para. 23(3)(b) substituted (31.12.2020) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **176(6)(a)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F273** Sch. 1 para. 23(4)(a)-(d) substituted (31.12.2020) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **176(6)(b)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F274** Sch. 1 para. 23(4A)(4B) inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(i)(ii)**
- F275** Words in Sch. 1 para. 23(4A)(c) substituted (31.12.2020) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **176(6)(a)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F276** Sch. 1 para. 23(4B)(a)-(d) substituted (31.12.2020) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **176(6)(b)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)
- F277** Sch. 1 para. 23(5) omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **176(6)(c)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as

amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)

## [<sup>F278</sup>Emission allowances **U.K.**

**23A.**—[<sup>F279</sup>(1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2)—

- (a) emission allowances consisting of any units recognised for compliance (by an EEA State) with the requirements of the emission allowance trading directive; and
- (b) allowances created under article 18 of the Greenhouse Gas Emissions Trading Scheme Order 2020 and transferable in accordance with that order.]

(2) Sub-paragraph (1) only applies to emission allowances in relation to which—

- [<sup>F280</sup>(a) an investment firm or qualifying credit institution is providing or performing investment services and activities on a professional basis;
- (b) a management company which has a Part 4A permission to do so is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 4 or 5 of Part 3 of Schedule 2 or the ancillary service specified in paragraph 1 of Part 3A of that Schedule;
- (c) a market operator is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 8 or 9 of Part 3 of that Schedule;
- (d) a full-scope UK AIFM which has a Part 4A permission to do so is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 1, 4 or 5 of Part 3 of that Schedule or the ancillary service specified in paragraph 1 of Part 3A of that Schedule.]]

### Textual Amendments

**F278** Sch. 1 para. 23A inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017](#) (S.I. 2017/488), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(j)**

**F279** Sch. 1 para. 23A(1) substituted (22.4.2021) by [The Recognised Auction Platforms \(Amendment and Miscellaneous Provisions\) Regulations 2021](#) (S.I. 2021/494), regs. 1(2), **4**

**F280** Sch. 1 para. 23A(2)(a)-(d) substituted (31.12.2020) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019](#) (S.I. 2019/632), regs. 1(3), **176(7)(b)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1)

## Lloyd's syndicate capacity and syndicate membership **U.K.**

**24.**—(1) The underwriting capacity of a Lloyd's syndicate.

(2) A person's membership (or prospective membership) of a Lloyd's syndicate.

## Funeral plan contracts **U.K.**

**25.** Rights under a qualifying funeral plan contract.

## Agreements for qualifying credit **U.K.**

**26.** Rights under an agreement for qualifying credit.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

**[<sup>F281</sup> Regulated home reversion plans U.K.]**

**26A.** Rights under a regulated home reversion plan.

**Textual Amendments**

**F281** Sch. 1 paras. 26A, 26B inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **35(6)(a)**

**Regulated home purchase plans U.K.]**

**26B.** Rights under a regulated home purchase plan.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F281** Sch. 1 paras. 26A, 26B inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **35(6)(a)**

**[<sup>F282</sup> Regulated sale and rent back agreement U.K.]**

**26C.** Rights under a regulated sale and rent back agreement.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F282** Sch. 1 para. 26C inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **30(5)(a)**

**[<sup>F283</sup> Relevant credit agreements U.K.]**

**26D.** Rights under a relevant credit agreement

**Textual Amendments**

**F283** Sch. 1 paras. 26D, 26E inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **17(6)(d)**

**Consumer hire agreements U.K.]**

**26E.** Rights under a consumer hire agreement]

**Textual Amendments**

**F283** Sch. 1 paras. 26D, 26E inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **17(6)(d)**

<sup>F284</sup>**Qualifying cryptoasset** **U.K.**

**26F.**—(1) Subject to sub-paragraph (3), a “qualifying cryptoasset” is any cryptoasset which is—

- (a) fungible; and
- (b) transferable.

(2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(b), the circumstances in which a cryptoasset is to be treated as “transferable” include where—

- (a) it confers transferable rights; or
- (b) a communication made in relation to the cryptoasset describes it as being transferable or conferring transferable rights.

(3) A cryptoasset does not fall within sub-paragraph (1) if it is—

- (a) a controlled investment falling within any of paragraphs 12 to 26E or, so far as relevant to any such investment, paragraph 27;
- (b) electronic money;
- (c) fiat currency;
- (d) digitally issued fiat currency; or
- (e) a cryptoasset that—
  - (i) cannot be transferred or sold in exchange for money or other cryptoassets, except by way of redemption with the issuer; and
  - (ii) can only be used in a limited way and meets one of the following conditions—
    - (aa) it allows the holder to acquire goods or services only from the issuer;
    - (ab) it is issued by a professional issuer and allows the holder to acquire goods or services only within a limited network of service providers which have direct commercial agreements with the issuer; or
    - (ac) it may be used only to acquire a very limited range of goods or services.

(4) In this paragraph—

“cryptoasset” means any cryptographically secured digital representation of value or contractual rights that—

- (a) can be transferred, stored or traded electronically, and
- (b) uses technology supporting the recording or storage of data (which may include distributed ledger technology);

“digitally issued fiat currency” means fiat currency issued in digital form;

“electronic money” has the meaning given by regulation 2(1) (interpretation) of the Electronic Money Regulations 2011.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F284** Sch. 1 para. 26F inserted (8.6.2023 for specified purposes) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) \(Amendment\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/612\)](#), arts. 1(2), 9 (with art. 11)

**Rights to or interests in investments** **U.K.**

**27.**—(1) Subject to sub-paragraphs (2) and (3), any right to or interest in anything which is specified by any other provision of this Part of this Schedule (other than [<sup>F285</sup>paragraph 26, [<sup>F286</sup>26A, 26B or 26C]]).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

(2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply to interests under the trusts of an occupational pension scheme.

(2A) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply to any right or interest acquired as a result of entering into a funeral plan contract (and for this purpose a “funeral plan contract” is a contract of a kind described in paragraph 9(2)(a) and (b)).

(3) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply to anything which falls within any other provision of this Part of this Schedule.

#### Textual Amendments

**F285** Words in Sch. 1 para. 27(1) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), 35(6)(b)

**F286** Words in Sch. 1 para. 27(1) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), [arts. 1\(2\)](#), 30(5)(b)

#### Interpretation **U.K.**

**28.** In this Schedule—

[<sup>F287</sup>“AIFM” has the meaning given in the Regulated Activities Order;]

[<sup>F288</sup>“agreement provider” has the meaning given in paragraph (3) of article 63J of the Regulated Activities Order, read with paragraphs (6) and (7) of that article;

“agreement seller” has the meaning given in article 63J(3) of the Regulated Activities Order]

[<sup>F289</sup>“borrower” has the meaning given by article 60L of the Regulated Activities Order;]

“buying” includes acquiring for valuable consideration;

[<sup>F290</sup>“Commission Regulation” <sup>F291</sup>... [<sup>F291</sup>has the meaning given in the Regulated Activities Order] ;]

[<sup>F289</sup>“consumer hire agreement” has the meaning given by article 60N of the Regulated Activities Order;]

“contract of insurance” has the meaning given in the Regulated Activities Order;

“contractually based investment” means—

- (a) rights under a qualifying contract of insurance;
- (b) any investment of the kind specified by any of paragraphs 21, 22, 23 and 25;
- (c) any investment of the kind specified by paragraph 27 so far as relevant to an investment falling within (a) or (b);

<sup>F292</sup>...

[<sup>F293</sup>“EU trading venue” has the meaning given by Article 2.1.16B of the markets in financial instruments regulation;]

[<sup>F289</sup>“hirer” has the meaning given by article 60N of the Regulated Activities Order;]

[<sup>F294</sup>“home purchase provider” and “home purchaser” have the meanings given in article 63F(3) of the Regulated Activities Order;]

[<sup>F290</sup>“investment firm” has the meaning given in the Regulated Activities Order;

“investment services and activities” has the meaning given in the Regulated Activities Order;]



- [<sup>F289</sup>“lender” has the meaning given by article 60L of the Regulated Activities Order;]
- [<sup>F290</sup>“management company” has the meaning given in the Regulated Activities Order;
- “market operator” has the meaning given in the Regulated Activities Order;
- [<sup>F287</sup>“markets in financial instruments directive” means [Directive 2014/65/EU](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council of 15 May 2014 on markets in financial instruments (recast);]
- “MiFID instrument” has the meaning given in article 25D(2) of the Regulated Activities Order;
- “multilateral trading facility” has the meaning given in the Regulated Activities Order;]
- [<sup>F287</sup>“non-equity MiFID instrument” has the meaning given in article 25DA of the Regulated Activities Order;]
- [<sup>F295</sup>“occupational pension scheme” has the meaning given by section 1 of the Pension Schemes Act 1993 but with paragraph (b) of the definition omitted;]
- [<sup>F287</sup>“organised trading facility” has the meaning given in the Regulated Activities Order;]
- [<sup>F296</sup>“plan provider” has the meaning given by paragraph (3) of article 63B of the Regulated Activities Order, read with paragraphs (7) and (8) of that article;]
- “property” includes currency of the United Kingdom or any other country or territory;
- [<sup>F293</sup>“qualifying credit institution” has the meaning given in the Regulated Activities Order;]
- “qualifying funeral plan contract” has the meaning given by paragraph 9;
- [<sup>F289</sup>“regulated consumer hire agreement” has the meaning given by article 60N of the Regulated Activities Order;]
- [<sup>F289</sup>“regulated credit agreement” has the meaning given by article 60B of the Regulated Activities Order;]
- [<sup>F297</sup>“regulated home purchase plan” has the meaning given in article 63F(3) of the Regulated Activities Order;
- “regulated home reversion plan” and “reversion seller” have the meanings given in article 63B(3) of the Regulated Activities Order;]
- [<sup>F298</sup>“regulated sale and rent back agreement” has the meaning given in article 63J(3) of the Regulated Activities Order;]
- <sup>F299</sup> ...
- [<sup>F299</sup>“relevant credit agreement” means a credit agreement (within the meaning given by article 60B of the Regulated Activities Order) other than—
- (a) a regulated mortgage contract or a regulated home purchase plan (within the meaning of that Order); or
  - (b) a buy-to-let mortgage contract as defined in article 4 of the Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015;]
- [<sup>F289</sup>“relevant recipient of credit” has the meaning given by article 60L of the Regulated Activities Order.]
- “security” means a controlled investment falling within any of paragraphs 14 to 20 [<sup>F300</sup>or 23A] or, so far as relevant to any such investment, paragraph 27;
- “selling”, in relation to any investment, includes disposing of the investment for valuable consideration, and for these purposes “disposing” includes—
- (a) in the case of an investment consisting of rights under a contract—
    - (i) surrendering, assigning or converting those rights; or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

- (ii) assuming the corresponding liabilities under the contract;
- (b) in the case of an investment consisting of rights under other arrangements, assuming the corresponding liabilities under the arrangements; and
- (c) in the case of any other investment, issuing or creating the investment or granting the rights or interests of which it consists;

“syndicate” has the meaning given in the Regulated Activities Order.

[<sup>F293</sup>“UK trading venue” has the meaning given by Article 2.1.16 of the markets in financial instruments regulation.]

### Textual Amendments

- F287** Words in Sch. 1 para. 28 inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(k)(i)**
- F288** Words in Sch. 1 para. 28 inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), 30(5)(c)(i)
- F289** Words in Sch. 1 para. 28 inserted (26.7.2013 for specified purposes, 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/1881\)](#), arts. 1(2)(6), **17(6)(e)**
- F290** Words in Sch. 1 para. 28 inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **40(6)**
- F291** Words in Sch. 1 para. 28 substituted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(k)(ii)**
- F292** Words in Sch. 1 para. 28 omitted (31.12.2020) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **176(8)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1))
- F293** Words in Sch. 1 para. 28 inserted (31.12.2020) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/632\)](#), regs. 1(3), **176(8)** (with reg. 162(2)) (as amended by S.I. 2020/1301, regs. 1, 3, Sch. para. 33(u) and with savings in S.I. 2019/680, reg. 11 (as amended by S.I. 2019/1212, regs. 1(3), 22(3)); 2020 c. 1, Sch. 5 para. 1(1))
- F294** Words in Sch. 1 para. 28 inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **35(6)(c)(i)**
- F295** Words in Sch. 1 para. 28 substituted (6.4.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1969\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), 12(4)
- F296** Words in Sch. 1 para. 28 inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **35(6)(c)(ii)**
- F297** Words in Sch. 1 para. 28 inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **35(6)(c)(iii)**
- F298** Words in Sch. 1 para. 28 inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), 30(5)(c)(ii)
- F299** Words in Sch. 1 para. 28 substituted (20.4.2015 for specified purposes, 21.12.2015 for specified purposes, 21.3.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [The Mortgage Credit Directive Order 2015 \(S.I. 2015/910\)](#), art. 1(5), **Sch. 1 para. 12(3)** (with Pt. 4)

**F300** Words in Sch. 1 para. 28 inserted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(10)(k)(iii)**

## SCHEDULE 2 **U.K.**

Article 10

### COUNTRIES AND TERRITORIES

1. The Bailiwick of Guernsey.
2. The Isle of Man.
3. The Commonwealth of Pennsylvania.
4. The State of Iowa.
5. The Bailiwick of Jersey.

## SCHEDULE 3 **U.K.**

Articles 37, 41, 67, 68 and 69

### MARKETS AND EXCHANGES

## [<sup>F301</sup>PART A1 **U.K.**

### Criteria for Relevant UK Markets

#### Textual Amendments

**F301** Sch. 3 Pt. A1 inserted (18.10.2021) by [The Markets in Financial Instruments, Benchmarks and Financial Promotions \(Amendment\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2021 \(S.I. 2021/1074\)](#), regs. 1(2), **2(8)**

The criteria for a “relevant UK market” are—

- (a) the head office of the market must be situated in the United Kingdom; and
- (b) the market must satisfy any requirements of the law of the United Kingdom as to—
  - (i) the manner in which it operates;
  - (ii) the means by which access may be had to the facilities it provides;
  - (iii) the conditions to be satisfied before an investment may be traded or dealt in by means of its facilities; and
  - (iii) the reporting and publication of transactions effected by means of its facilities.]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

## PART I U.K.

### *Criteria for Relevant EEA [<sup>F302</sup>or Gibraltar] Markets*

#### Textual Amendments

**F302** Words in Sch. 3 Pt. 1 heading inserted (31.12.2020) by [The Gibraltar \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/680\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(a)**; 2020 c. 1, **Sch. 5 para. 1(1)**

#### U.K.

The criteria are—

- (a) the head office of the market must be situated in an EEA State [<sup>F303</sup>or in Gibraltar]; and
- (b) the market must be subject to requirements in the EEA State in which its head office is situated [<sup>F304</sup>or (where its head office is situated in Gibraltar), in Gibraltar] as to—
  - (i) the manner in which it operates;
  - (ii) the means by which access may be had to the facilities it provides;
  - (iii) the conditions to be satisfied before an investment may be traded or dealt in by means of its facilities;
  - (iv) the reporting and publication of transactions effected by means of its facilities.

#### Textual Amendments

**F303** Words in Sch. 3 Pt. 1 inserted (31.12.2020) by [The Gibraltar \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/680\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(b)**; 2020 c. 1, **Sch. 5 para. 1(1)**

**F304** Words in Sch. 3 Pt. 1 inserted (31.12.2020) by [The Gibraltar \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/680\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(c)**; 2020 c. 1, **Sch. 5 para. 1(1)**

#### Textual Amendments

**F303** Words in Sch. 3 Pt. 1 inserted (31.12.2020) by [The Gibraltar \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/680\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(b)**; 2020 c. 1, **Sch. 5 para. 1(1)**

**F304** Words in Sch. 3 Pt. 1 inserted (31.12.2020) by [The Gibraltar \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) \(EU Exit\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/680\)](#), regs. 1(2), **5(c)**; 2020 c. 1, **Sch. 5 para. 1(1)**

## <sup>F305</sup>Part 2 U.K.

### *Certain Investment Exchanges Operating Relevant EEA Markets*

#### Textual Amendments

**F305** Sch. 3 Pt. 2 omitted (1.4.2017 for specified purposes, 3.1.2018 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2017 \(S.I. 2017/488\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9(11)**

## PART III U.K.

### *Certain Non-EEA Investment Exchanges Operating Relevant Markets*

#### U.K.

America Stock Exchange.  
Australian Stock Exchange.  
Basler Effektenbourse.  
Boston Stock Exchange.  
Bourse de Geneve.  
Buenos Aires Stock Exchange.  
Canadian Venture Exchange.  
Chicago Board Options Exchange.  
Chicago Stock Exchange.  
Effektenborsenverein Zurich.  
Fukuoka Stock Exchange.  
Hiroshima Stock Exchange.  
Iceland Stock Exchange.  
Johannesburg Stock Exchange.  
Korean Stock Exchange.  
Kuala Lumpur Stock Exchange  
Kyoto Stock Exchange.  
Midwest Stock Exchange.  
Montreal Stock Exchange.  
Nagoya Stock Exchange.  
NASDAQ.  
National Stock Exchange.  
New York Stock Exchange.  
New Zealand Stock Exchange Limited.  
Niigata Stock Exchange.  
Osaka Stock Exchange.  
Oslo Stock Exchange  
Pacific Stock Exchange.  
Philadelphia Stock Exchange.  
Sapporo Stock Exchange.  
Singapore Stock Exchange.  
Stock Exchange of Hong Kong Limited.  
Stock Exchange of Thailand.  
Tokyo Stock Exchange.  
Toronto Stock Exchange.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

## PART IV U.K.

### *Other Relevant Markets*

#### U.K.

American Commodity Exchange.  
Australian Financial Futures Market.  
Chicago Board of Trade.  
Chicago Mercantile Exchange.  
Chicago Rice and Cotton Exchange.  
Commodity Exchange Inc.  
Eurex US.  
Eurex Zurich.  
International Securities Market Association.  
International Petroleum Exchange.  
Kansas City Board of Trade.  
London Metal Exchange.  
Minneapolis Grain Exchange.  
New York Board of Trade.  
New York Futures Exchange.  
New York Mercantile Exchange.  
New Zealand Futures Exchange.  
Pacific Commodity Exchange.  
Philadelphia Board of Trade.  
Singapore International Monetary Exchange.  
Sydney Futures Exchange.  
Toronto Futures Exchange.

#### SCHEDULE 4 U.K.

Articles 63 and 64

### TAKEOVERS OF RELEVANT UNLISTED COMPANIES

## PART I U.K.

### *Requirements Relating to the Offer*

1. The terms of the offer must be recommended by all the directors of the company other than any director who is—
  - (a) the person by whom, or on whose behalf, an offer is made (“offeror”); or
  - (b) a director of the offeror.

2.—(1) This paragraph applies to an offer for debentures or for non-equity share capital.

(2) Where, at the date of the offer, shares carrying 50 per cent or less of the voting rights attributable to the equity share capital are held by or on behalf of the offeror, the offer must include or be accompanied by an offer made by the offeror for the rest of the shares comprised in the equity share capital.

(1)

This paragraph applies to an offer for shares comprised in the equity share capital.

(2) Where, at the date of the offer, shares which carry 50 per cent or less of the categories of voting rights described in sub-paragraph (3) are held by or on behalf of the offeror, it must be a condition of the offer that sufficient shares will be acquired or agreed to be acquired by the offeror pursuant to or during the offer so as to result in shares carrying more than 50 per cent of one or both categories of relevant voting rights being held by him or on his behalf.

(3) The categories of voting rights mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) are—

- (a) voting rights exercisable in general meetings of the company;
- (b) voting rights attributable to the equity share capital.

4.—(1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), the offer must be open for acceptance by every recipient for the period of at least 21 days beginning with the day after the day on which the invitation or inducement in question was first communicated to recipients of the offer.

(2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply if the offer is totally withdrawn and all persons are released from any obligation incurred under it.

5. The acquisition of the shares or debentures to which the offer relates must not be conditional upon the recipients approving, or consenting, to any payment or other benefit being made or given to any director or former director of the company in connection with, or as compensation or consideration for—

- (a) his ceasing to be a director;
- (b) his ceasing to hold any office held in conjunction with any directorship; or
- (c) in the case of a former director, his ceasing to hold any office which he held in conjunction with his former directorship and which he continued to hold after ceasing to be a director.

6. The consideration for the shares or debentures must be—

- (a) cash; or
- (b) in the case of an offeror which is a body corporate other than an open-ended investment company, either cash or shares in, or debentures of, the body corporate or any combination of such cash, shares or debentures.

## PART II U.K.

### *Accompanying Material*

7. An indication of the identity of the offeror and, if the offer is being made on behalf of another person, the identity of that person.

8. An indication of the fact that the terms of the offer are recommended by all directors of the company other than (if that is the case) any director who is the offeror or a director of the offeror.

9. An indication to the effect that any person who is in any doubt about the invitation or inducement should consult a person authorised under the Act.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

**10.** An indication that, except insofar as the offer may be totally withdrawn and all persons released from any obligation incurred under it, the offer is open for acceptance by every recipient for the period of at least 21 days beginning with the day after the day on which the invitation or inducement in question was first communicated to recipients of the offer.

**11.** An indication of the date on which the invitation or inducement was first communicated to the recipients of the offer.

**12.** An indication that the acquisition of the shares or debentures to which the offer relates is not conditional upon the recipients approving, or consenting, to any payment or other benefit being made or given to any director or former director of the company in connection with, or as compensation or consideration for—

- (a) his ceasing to be a director;
- (b) his ceasing to hold any office held in conjunction with any directorship; or
- (c) in the case of a former director, his ceasing to hold any office which he held in conjunction with his former directorship and which he continued to hold after ceasing to be a director.

**13.** An indication of the place where additional material listed in Part III may be inspected.

**14.** The audited accounts of the company in respect of the latest accounting reference period for which the period for laying and delivering accounts under [<sup>F306</sup>the 2006 Act] has passed or, if accounts in respect of a later accounting reference period have been delivered under the relevant legislation, as shown in those accounts and not the earlier accounts.

#### Textual Amendments

**F306** Words in [Sch. 4 para. 14](#) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(9)(a)**

**15.** Advice to the directors of the company on the financial implications of the offer which is given by a competent person who is independent of and who has no substantial financial interest in the company or the offeror, being advice which gives the opinion of that person in relation to the offer.

**16.** An indication by the directors of the company, acting as a board, of the following matters—

- (a) whether or not there has been any material change in the financial position or prospects of the company since the end of the latest accounting reference period in respect of which audited accounts have been delivered to the relevant registrar of companies under the relevant legislation;
- (b) if there has been any such change, the particulars of it;
- (c) any interests, in percentage terms, which any of them have in the shares in or debentures of the company<sup>F307</sup> ...;
- (d) any interests, in percentage terms, which any of them have in the shares in or debentures of any offeror which is a body corporate<sup>F308</sup> ...

#### Textual Amendments

**F307** Words in [Sch. 4 para. 16\(c\)](#) omitted (12.5.2011) by virtue of [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(9)(b)(i)**



**F308** Words in Sch. 4 para. 16(d) omitted (12.5.2011) by virtue of The Companies Act 2006 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/1265), arts. 1(2), 26(9)(b)(ii)

**17.** An indication of any material interest which any director has in any contract entered into by the offeror and in any contract entered into by any member of any group of which the offeror is a member.

**18.** An indication as to whether or not each director intends to accept the offer in respect of his own beneficial holdings in the company.

**19.** In the case of an offeror which is a body corporate and the shares in or debentures of which are to be the consideration or any part of the consideration for the offer, an indication by the directors of the offeror that the information concerning the offeror and those shares or debentures contained in the document is correct.

**20.** If the offeror is making the offer on behalf of another person—

- (a) an indication by the offeror as to whether or not he has taken any steps to ascertain whether that person will be in a position to implement the offer;
- (b) if he has taken any such steps, an indication by him as to what those steps are; and
- (c) the offeror's opinion as to whether that person will be in a position to implement the offer.

**21.** An indication that each of the following—

- (a) each of the directors of the company;
- (b) the offeror; and
- (c) if the offeror is a body corporate, each of the directors of the offeror;

is responsible for the information required by Part I and this Part of this Schedule insofar as it relates to themselves or their respective bodies corporate and that, to the best of their knowledge and belief (having taken all reasonable care to ensure that such is the case) the information is in accordance with the facts and that no material fact has been omitted.

**22.** The particulars of—

- (a) all shares in or debentures of the company; and
- (b) all investments falling within paragraph 17, 19 or 21 of Schedule 1 so far as relating to shares in or debentures of the company;

which are held by or on behalf of the offeror or each offeror, if there is more than one, or if none are so held an appropriate negative statement.

**23.** An indication as to whether or not the offer is conditional upon acceptance in respect of a minimum number of shares or debentures being received and, if the offer is so conditional, what the minimum number is.

**24.** Where the offer is conditional upon acceptances, an indication of the date which is the latest date on which it can become unconditional.

**25.** If the offer is, or has become, unconditional an indication of the fact that it will remain open until further notice and that at least 14 days' notice will be given before it is closed.

**26.** An indication as to whether or not, if circumstances arise in which an offeror is able compulsorily to acquire shares of any dissenting minority under [F309]Chapter 3 of Part 28 of the Companies Act 2006 (c.46)], that offeror intends to so acquire those shares.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

**F309** Words in Sch. 4 para. 26 substituted (6.4.2007) by The Companies Act 2006 (Commencement No. 2, Consequential Amendments, Transitional Provisions and Savings) Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/1093), art. 1(3), Sch. 3 para. 10

27. If shares or debentures are to be acquired for cash, an indication of the period within which the payment will be made.

28.—(1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), if the consideration or any part of the consideration for the shares or debentures to be acquired is shares in or debentures of an offeror—

- (a) an indication of the nature and particulars of the offeror's business, its financial and trading prospects and its place of incorporation;
- (b) the following information, in respect of any offeror which is a body corporate and in respect of the company, for the period of five years immediately preceding the date on which the invitation or inducement in question was first communicated to recipients of the offer—
  - (i) turnover,
  - (ii) profit on ordinary activities before and after tax,
  - (iii) extraordinary items,
  - (iv) profits and loss, and
  - (v) the rate per cent of any dividends paid, adjusted as appropriate to take account of relevant changes over the period and the total amount absorbed thereby.

(2) In the case of a body corporate—

- (a) which was incorporated during the period of five years immediately preceding the date on which the invitation or inducement in question was first communicated to recipients of the offer; or
- (b) which has, at any time during that period, been exempt from the provisions of [<sup>F310</sup>Part 15 of the 2006 Act] relating to the audit of accounts by virtue of [<sup>F311</sup>section 477 or 480] of that Act<sup>F312</sup> ...;

the information described in sub-paragraph (1) with respect to that body corporate need be included only in relation to the period since its incorporation or since it last ceased to be exempt from those provisions of [<sup>F313</sup>Part 15 of the 2006 Act].

### Textual Amendments

**F310** Words in Sch. 4 para. 28(2)(b) substituted (12.5.2011) by The Companies Act 2006 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/1265), arts. 1(2), 26(9)(c)(i)(aa)

**F311** Words in Sch. 4 para. 28(2)(b) substituted (12.5.2011) by The Companies Act 2006 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/1265), arts. 1(2), 26(9)(c)(i)(bb)

**F312** Words in Sch. 4 para. 28(2)(b) omitted (12.5.2011) by virtue of The Companies Act 2006 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/1265), arts. 1(2), 26(9)(c)(i)(cc)

**F313** Words in Sch. 4 para. 28(2) substituted (12.5.2011) by The Companies Act 2006 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/1265), arts. 1(2), 26(9)(c)(ii)

29. Particulars of the first dividend in which any such shares or debentures will participate and of the rights attaching to them (including in the case of debentures, rights as to interest) and of any restrictions on their transfer.

**30.** An indication of the effect of the acceptance on the capital and income position of the holder of the shares in or debentures of the company.

**31.** Particulars of all material contracts (not being contracts which were entered into in the ordinary course of business) which were entered into by each of the company and the offeror during the period of two years immediately preceding the date on which the invitation or inducement in question was first communicated to recipients of the offer.

**32.** Particulars of the terms on which shares in or debentures of the company acquired in pursuance of the offer will be transferred and any restrictions on their transfer.

**33.** An indication as to whether or not it is proposed, in connection with the offer, that any payment or other benefit be made or given to any director or former director of the company in connection with, or as compensation or consideration for—

- (a) his ceasing to be a director;
- (b) his ceasing to hold any office held in conjunction with any directorship; or
- (c) in the case of a former director, his ceasing to hold any office which he held in conjunction with his former directorship and which he continued to hold after ceasing to be a director;

and, if such payments or benefits are proposed, details of each one.

**34.** An indication as to whether or not there exists any agreement or arrangement between—

- (a) the offeror or any person with whom the offeror has an agreement of the kind described in <sup>F314</sup>section 824 of the 2006 Act]; and
- (b) any director or shareholder of the company or any person who has been such a director or shareholder;

at any time during the period of twelve months immediately preceding the date on which the invitation or inducement in question was first communicated to recipients of the offer, being an agreement or arrangement which is connected with or dependent on the offer and, if there is any such agreement or arrangement, particulars of it.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F314** Words in Sch. 4 para. 34(a) substituted (12.5.2011) by The Companies Act 2006 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/1265), arts. 1(2), 26(9)(d)

**35.** An indication whether or not the offeror has reason to believe that there has been any material change in the financial position or prospects of the company since the end of the accounting reference period to which the accounts referred to in paragraph 14 relate, and if the offeror has reason to believe that there has been such a change, the particulars of it.

**36.** An indication as to whether or not there is any agreement or arrangement whereby any shares or debentures acquired by the offeror in pursuance of the offer will or may be transferred to any other person, together with the names of the parties to any such agreement or arrangement and particulars of all shares and debentures in the company held by such persons.

**37.** Particulars of any dealings—

- (a) in the shares in or debentures of the company; and
- (b) if the offeror is a body corporate, in the shares in or debentures of the offeror;

which took place during the period of twelve months immediately preceding the date on which the invitation or inducement in question was first communicated to recipients of the offer and which

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

were entered into by every person who was a director of either the company or the offeror during that period; and, if there have been no such dealings, an indication to that effect.

**38.** In a case in which the offeror is a body corporate which is required to deliver accounts under [<sup>F315</sup>the 2006 Act], particulars of the assets and liabilities as shown in its audited accounts in respect of the latest accounting reference period for which the period for laying and delivering accounts under the relevant legislation has passed or, if accounts in respect of a later accounting reference period have been delivered under the relevant legislation, as shown in those accounts and not the earlier accounts.

#### Textual Amendments

**F315** Words in [Sch. 4 para. 38](#) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(9)(e)**

**39.** Where valuations of assets are given in connection with the offer, the basis on which the valuation was made and the names and addresses of the persons who valued them and particulars of any relevant qualifications.

**40.** If any profit forecast is given in connection with the offer, an indication of the assumptions on which the forecast is based.

## PART III U.K.

### *Additional Material Available for Inspection*

**41.** The memorandum and articles of association of the company.

**42.** If the offeror is a body corporate, the memorandum and articles of association of the offeror or, if there is no such memorandum and articles, any instrument constituting or defining the constitution of the offeror and, in either case, if the relevant document is not written in English, a certified translation in English.

**43.** In the case of a company that does not fall within paragraph 45—

- (a) the audited accounts of the company in respect of the last two accounting reference periods for which the laying and delivering of accounts under [<sup>F316</sup>the 2006 Act] has passed; and
- (b) if accounts have been delivered to the relevant registrar of companies, in respect of a later accounting reference period, a copy of those accounts.

#### Textual Amendments

**F316** Words in [Sch. 4 para. 43](#) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(10)(a)**

**44.** In the case of an offeror which is required to deliver accounts to the registrar of companies and which does not fall within paragraph 45—

- (a) the audited accounts of the offeror in respect of the last two accounting reference periods for which the laying and delivering of accounts under [<sup>F317</sup>the 2006 Act] has passed; and
- (b) if accounts have been delivered to the relevant registrar of companies in respect of a later accounting reference period, a copy of those accounts.

#### Textual Amendments

**F317** Words in Sch. 4 para. 44 substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(10)(b)**

**45.** In the case of a company or an offeror—

- (a) which was incorporated during the period of three years immediately preceding the date on which the invitation or inducement in question was first communicated to recipients of the offer; or
- (b) which has, at any time during that period, been exempt from the provisions of [<sup>F318</sup>Part 15 of the 2006 Act] relating to the audit of accounts by virtue of [<sup>F319</sup>section 477 or 480] of that Act <sup>F320</sup> ...;

the information described in whichever is relevant of paragraph 43 or 44 with respect to that body corporate need be included only in relation to the period since its incorporation or since it last ceased to be exempt from those provisions of [<sup>F321</sup>Part 15 of the 2006 Act].

#### Textual Amendments

**F318** Words in Sch. 4 para. 45(b) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(10)(c)(i)(aa)**

**F319** Words in Sch. 4 para. 45(b) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(10)(c)(i)(bb)**

**F320** Words in Sch. 4 para. 45(b) omitted (12.5.2011) by virtue of [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(10)(c)(i)(cc)**

**F321** Words in Sch. 4 para. 45 substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(10)(c)(ii)**

**46.** All existing contracts of service entered into for a period of more than one year between the company and any of its directors and, if the offeror is a body corporate, between the offeror and any of its directors.

**47.** Any report, letter, valuation or other document any part of which is exhibited or referred to in the information required to be made available by Part II and this Part of this Schedule.

**48.** If the offer document contains any statement purporting to have been made by an expert, that expert's written consent to the inclusion of that statement.

**49.** All material contracts (if any) of the company and of the offeror (not, in either case, being contracts which were entered into in the ordinary course of business) which were entered into during the period of two years immediately preceding the date on which the invitation or inducement in question was first communicated to recipients of the offer.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

SCHEDULE 5 **U.K.**

Articles 48 and 50A

STATEMENTS FOR CERTIFIED HIGH NET WORTH INDIVIDUALS  
AND SELF-CERTIFIED SOPHISTICATED INVESTORS

**PART I** **U.K.**

*STATEMENT FOR CERTIFIED HIGH NET WORTH INDIVIDUALS*

1. The statement to be signed for the purposes of article 48(2) (definition of high net worth individual) must be in the following form and contain the following content—

**“ Statement for Certified High Net Worth Individual**

I declare that I am a certified high net worth individual for the purposes of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005.

I understand that this means:

- (a) (a) I can receive financial promotions that may not have been approved by a person authorised by the [<sup>F322</sup>Financial Conduct Authority];
- (b) the content of such financial promotions may not conform to rules issued by the [<sup>F322</sup>Financial Conduct Authority];
- (c) **by signing this statement I may lose significant rights;**
- (d) I may have no right to complain to either of the following—
  - (i) the [<sup>F322</sup>Financial Conduct Authority]; or
  - (ii) the Financial Ombudsman Scheme;
- (e) I may have no right to seek compensation from the Financial Services Compensation Scheme.

I am a certified high net worth individual because **at least one of the following applies—**

- (a) (a) I had, during the financial year immediately preceding the date below, an annual income to the value of £100,000 or more;
  - (b) I held, throughout the financial year immediately preceding the date below, net assets to the value of £250,000 or more. Net assets for these purposes do not include—
    - (i) the property which is my primary residence or any loan secured on that residence;
    - (ii) any rights of mine under a qualifying contract of insurance within the meaning of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001;
- or
- (iii) any benefits (in the form of pensions or otherwise) which are payable on the termination of my service or on my death or retirement and to which I am (or my dependants are), or may be, entitled.

**I accept that I can lose my property and other assets from making investment decisions based on financial promotions.**

I am aware that it is open to me to seek advice from someone who specialises in advising on investments.

Signature

Date”.

### Textual Amendments

**F322** Words in Sch. 5 substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 108(d)**

## PART II U.K.

### STATEMENT FOR SELF-CERTIFIED SOPHISTICATED INVESTORS

2. The statement to be signed for the purposes of article 50A(1) (definition of self-certified sophisticated investor) must be in the following form and contain the following content—

#### “Statement for Self-Certified Sophisticated Investor

I declare that I am a self-certified sophisticated investor for the purposes of the Financial Services and Markets Act (Financial Promotion) Order 2005.

I understand that this means:

- (a) (a) I can receive financial promotions that may not have been approved by a person authorised by the [<sup>F322</sup>Financial Conduct Authority];
- (b) the content of such financial promotions may not conform to rules issued by the [<sup>F322</sup>Financial Conduct Authority];
- (c) **by signing this statement I may lose significant rights;**
- (d) I may have no right to complain to either of the following—
  - (i) the [<sup>F322</sup>Financial Conduct Authority]; or
  - (ii) the Financial Ombudsman Scheme;
- (e) I may have no right to seek compensation from the Financial Services Compensation Scheme.

I am a self-certified sophisticated investor because **at least one of the following applies—**

- (a) (a) I am a member of a network or syndicate of business angels and have been so for at least the last six months prior to the date below;
- (b) I have made more than one investment in an unlisted company in the two years prior to the date below;
- (c) I am working, or have worked in the two years prior to the date below, in a professional capacity in the private equity sector, or in the provision of finance for small and medium enterprises;
- (d) I am currently, or have been in the two years prior to the date below, a director of a company with an annual turnover of at least £1 million.

**I accept that I can lose my property and other assets from making investment decisions based on financial promotions.**

I am aware that it is open to me to seek advice from someone who specialises in advising on investments.

Signature

Date”.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

**F322** Words in Sch. 5 substituted (1.4.2013) by [The Financial Services Act 2012 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/472\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 108(d)**

## SCHEDULE 6 **U.K.**

Article 74

### REVOCATION

<i>Order</i>	<i>Reference</i>	<i>Extent of revocation</i>
The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2001	S.I. 2001/1335	The whole Order
The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) (Amendment) Order 2001	S.I. 2001/2633	The whole Order
The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Miscellaneous Provisions) Order 2001	S.I. 2001/3650	Article 4 and 5
The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) (Amendment No. 2) Order 2001	S.I. 2001/3800	The whole Order
The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion and Miscellaneous Amendments) Order 2002	S.I. 2002/1310	Article 2
The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Commencement of Mortgage Regulation) (Amendment) Order 2002	S.I. 2002/1777	Article 4
The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) (Amendment) (Electronic Communications Directive) Order 2002	S.I. 2002/2157	The whole Order
The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) (Amendment) Order 2003	S.I. 2003/1676	The whole Order
The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial	S.I. 2005/270	Article 2 and Schedule 1



Promotion and Promotion  
of Collective Investment  
Schemes) (Miscellaneous  
Amendments) Order 2005

---

---

## EXPLANATORY NOTE

(This note does not form part of the Order)

This Order revokes and re-enacts, with certain amendments, the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2001 (S.I.2001/1335) (“the 2001 Order”), as amended. The Order continues to specify the kinds of activities and investments which are controlled activities and controlled investments for the purposes of section 21 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8) (“the Act”). Any invitation or inducement which is made in the course of business and which invites or induces someone either to enter into an agreement the making of which constitutes a controlled activity or to exercise rights conferred by a controlled investment is subject to the restriction imposed by section 21(1). Section 21(1) precludes anyone from communicating such an invitation or inducement unless either he is an authorised person within the meaning of the Act or the content of the communication is approved by an authorised person. Contravention of this prohibition is a criminal offence.

The terms “controlled activities” and “controlled investment” are defined for the purposes of section 21 of the Act by reference to the activities and investments set out in Schedule 1 to the Order.

The Order also continues to set out a number of exemptions from the restriction on financial promotions contained in section 21(1) of the Act, some of which apply to communications relating to all kinds of controlled activity while others relate to some activities only.

The principal changes made by this Order are—

- (1) the exemption in respect of communications made for the purpose of introducing the recipient to an authorised or an exempt person in certain circumstances is extended so as to apply to non-real time communications in addition to a real-time communications (article 15);
- (2) a new exemption is provided for certain communications made by an authorised person on behalf of an unauthorised person (article 17A);
- (3) the exemption in respect of communications made to associations of high net worth and sophisticated investors is extended so as to apply to communications made to individual members of such associations (article 51);
- (4) the exemption relating to communications by members of professions is not affected by a defect in the prescribed wording of the communication provided the defect does not affect the communication's meaning (article 55A);
- (5) a new exemption is provided in respect of a communication made by an employer to an employee in relation to a group personal pension scheme or a stakeholder pension scheme (article 72); and
- (6) a new exemption is provided in respect of communications made by advice centres in relation to qualifying credit, qualifying contracts of insurance and child trust funds (article 73).

A regulatory impact assessment has been prepared in relation to this Order and a copy can be obtained from the Financial Stability and Regulatory Policy Team, H M Treasury, 1 Horse Guards Road, London SW1A 2HQ.

**Status:**

Point in time view as at 08/06/2023.

**Changes to legislation:**

There are currently no known outstanding effects for the The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005.